Samsung GALAXY Tab® 2 10.1

ANDROID TABLET

User Manual

Please read this manual before operating your device and keep it for future reference.

Intellectual Property

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Galaxy Tab, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the "Galaxy Tab System"), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

Open Source Software

Some software components of this product, including but not limited to 'PowerTOP' and 'e2fsprogs', incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

http://opensource.samsung.com.

Disclaimer of Warranties; Exclusion of Liability

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY CONTAINED ON THE WARRANTY PAGE ENCLOSED WITH THE PRODUCT, THE PURCHASER TAKES THE PRODUCT "AS IS", AND SAMSUNG MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE; THE DESIGN, CONDITION OR QUALITY OF THE PRODUCT; THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT; THE WORKMANSHIP OF THE PRODUCT OR THE COMPONENTS CONTAINED THEREIN; OR COMPLIANCE OF THE PRODUCT WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF ANY LAW, RULE, SPECIFICATION OR CONTRACT PERTAINING

THERETO. NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL SHALL BE CONSTRUED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT. IN ADDITION, SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND RESULTING FROM THE PURCHASE OR USE OF THE PRODUCT OR ARISING FROM THE BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY, INCLUDING INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS OR BENEFITS.

SAMSUNG IS NOT LIABLE FOR PERFORMANCE ISSUES OR INCOMPATIBILITIES CAUSED BY YOUR EDITING OF REGISTRY SETTINGS, OR YOUR MODIFICATION OF OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE.

USING CUSTOM OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE MAY CAUSE YOUR DEVICE AND APPLICATIONS TO WORK IMPROPERLY.

SAFE™: "SAFE™" (Samsung for Enterprise) is a mark for a Samsung device which has been tested against Samsung's own internal criteria for interoperability with certain third party security-related solutions for MDM and VPN. The testing includes field testing with local network connection and menu tree testing which tests functionality of the solutions in conjunction with the Samsung device. During the testing, the device is tested with the security solutions to see if the solutions work with the device as described by the third party security solution providers. The testing, for example, includes field testing with local network connection and menu tree testing which tests functionality of the solutions in conjunction with the Samsung device. For more information about Samsung's SAFE™ program, please refer to www.samsung.com/us/safe.

Disclaimer of Warranties: EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE PROVIDED IN THEIR STANDARD END USER LICENSE AND WARRANTY, TO THE FULL EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., LTD., SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC, AND THEIR AFFILIATES (COLLECTIVELY REFERRED TO HEREIN AS THE "SAMSUNG ENTITIES") EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, INTEROPERABILITY OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFE™ DEVICES AND APPLICATIONS TESTED WITH SAFE™ DEVICES. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE SAMSUNG ENTITIES BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY SECURITY PROTECTION, SAFE™ DEVICES OR APPLICATIONS TESTED WITH SAFE™ DEVICES. In

addition, information technology security protection will be affected by features or functionality associated with, among other things the e-mail platform, master data management, and virtual private network solutions selected by the software provider, solution provider or user. Choice of an e-mail, master data management, and virtual private network solution is at the sole discretion of the software provider, solution provider or user and any associated effect on information technology security protection is solely the responsibility of the software provider, solution provider or user. For complete statement of limited warranty, please refer to www.samsung.com/us/safe, available on the web and where Samsung smartphone and Galaxy Tab™ devices are sold. [101212]

Samsung Telecommunications America (STA), LLC

Headquarters:
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, TX 75082

Customer Care Center:
1000 Klein Rd.
Plano, TX 75074
Toll Free Tel: 1.888.987.HELP (4357)

Internet Address:
http://www.samsung.com

©2012 Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC. Samsung is a registered trademark of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.

Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device?
For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at:
www.samsung.com/us/support

Nuance®, VSuite™, T9® Text Input, XT9® Smart Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark, figure mark (stylized “B Design”), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and “B Design”) are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Talk, Picasa, YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Peel and the Peel logo are marks owned by Peel Technologies, Inc. and may be registered.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.

DIVX HD, DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video up to HD 720p, including premium content.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified® device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu (tap **Apps > Settings > About device > Legal information > License settings > DivX® VOD > Register**). Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete your registration.

Table of Contents

Section 1: Getting Started 6

Understanding This User Manual 6
SIM Card 7
MicroSD Card 9
Battery 10
Turning Your Device On and Off 12
Extending Your Battery Life 13
Setting Up Your Device 14
Retrieving Your Google Account Password 17
Using Google Maps 17
Creating a Samsung Account 17
Task Manager 18
Galaxy Tab Accessories 20
Securing Your Device 20
Troubleshooting 21

Section 2: Understanding Your Device 22

Features 22
Front View 23
Side Views 24
Back View 25
Home Screen 26
Navigating Your Device 30
Notifications 32
Status Details 32
Quick Settings 33
Status Bar 35
Primary Shortcuts 37
Widgets 38
App Shortcuts 41
Wallpapers 42
Mini App Tray 43
Apps Screen 44
Applications 45

Section 3: Memory Card 52

Using the SD Card 52
SD card Overview 52

Section 4: Entering Text 55

Text Input Methods 55

Changing the Input Method 55
Samsung Keyboard 55
Entering Text Using Swype 61
Using Speech Recognition 64
Section 5: Contacts and Accounts 65
Accounts 65
Contacts 66
Groups 72
Favorites 74
Section 6: Messaging 76
Types of Messages 76
Creating and Sending Messages 76
Message Options 77
Viewing Newly Received Messages 79
Deleting Messages 81
Message Search 81
Messaging Settings 82
Text Templates 83
Gmail 84
Email 88
Google Talk 97
Messenger 101
Section 7: Multimedia 102
Camera 102
Camcorder 108
Video Player 113
Gallery 116
Photo Editor 121
Media Hub 122
Play Movies & TV 124
Play Music 125
Music Player 133
T-Mobile TV 140
Section 8: Web 141
Google+ 141
Internet 141
Section 9: Connections 150
Wi-Fi 150
Wi-Fi Direct 152
Bluetooth 154
USB Tethering 157
Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot 158
Kies Via Wi-Fi 160
Synchronizing with Windows Media Player . . 160

Connecting as a Mass Storage Device 161
GPS Applications 161
Section 10: Applications and Widgets ..162
Update Available 162
Alarm 162
AllShare Play 164
Calculator 166
Calendar 166
Camera 170
Contacts 170
Downloads 170
Email 171
Gallery 171
Game Base 171
Gmail 171
Google+ 171
Internet 171
Latitude 172
Local 174
Lookout Security 175
Maps 176
Media Hub 179
Memo 180
Messaging 181
Messenger 181
Mobile HotSpot 181
More for Me 182
Music Player 182
My Files 182
Navigation 184
Photo Editor 185
Play Books 186
Play Magazines 188
Play Movies & TV 188
Play Music 188
Play Store 189
Managing Downloads 190
Polaris Office 191
Pro Apps 192
S Suggest 193
Samsung Apps 193
Search 194
Settings 194
Slacker Radio 194

Smart Remote 195
T-Mobile My Account 195
T-Mobile TV 196
Talk 196
Video Maker 196
Video Player 196
VPN Client 197
World Clock 197
Yahoo! Finance 198
YouTube 200
Zinio 201
Section 11: Settings 202
Accessing Settings 202
Wireless and Network 202
Sound Settings 213
Display Settings 215
Power Saving Mode 217
Storage 218
Battery 219
Application Manager 219
Accounts and Synchronization 222
Location Services 224
Security 224
Language and Input 233
Back up and Reset 239
Accessory 240
Date and Time 241
Accessibility 241
Developer Options 243
About Device 245
Software Update 246
Section 12: Health and Safety Information 248
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals . . 248
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information 253
FCC Part 15 Information to User 255
Smart Practices While Driving 255
Battery Use and Safety 256
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling . . . 258
UL Certified Travel Charger 258
Display / Touch-Screen 259
GPS 259
Care and Maintenance 260

Responsible Listening 261
Operating Environment 263
Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device 265
FCC Notice and Cautions 265
Other Important Safety Information 265
Section 13: Warranty Information 267
Standard Limited Warranty 267
End User License Agreement for Software . . . 272
Index 280

Section 1: Getting Started

This section helps you to quickly start using your device.

Understanding This User Manual

The sections of this manual generally follow the features of your device. A robust index for features begins on page 280.

Also included is important safety information, beginning on page 248, that you should know before using your device.

This manual gives navigation instructions according to the default display settings. If you select other settings, navigation steps may be different.

Unless otherwise specified, all instructions in this manual assume that you are starting from a Home screen. To get to a Home screen, you may need to unlock the device. For more information, refer to *"Securing Your Device"* on page 20.

Note: Instructions in this manual are based on default settings and may vary from your device depending on the software version on your device and any changes to the device's settings.

Note: Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this user manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

All screen images in this manual are simulated. Actual displays may vary depending on the software version of your device and any changes to the device's settings.

Special Text

In this manual, some text is set apart from the rest. This special text is intended to point out important information, share quick methods for activating features, define terms, and more. The definitions for these methods are as follows:

- **Notes**: Presents alternative options for the current feature, menu, or sub-menu.
- **Tips**: Provides quick or innovative methods or useful shortcuts.
- **Important**: Points out important information about the current feature that could affect performance.
- **Warning**: Brings important information to your attention that can help to prevent loss of data or functionality or damage to your device.

Text Conventions

This manual provides condensed information about how to use your device. To make this possible, the following text conventions are used to represent often-used steps:

➔ Arrows are used to represent the sequence of selecting successive options in longer, or repetitive, procedures. For example:

From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.

SIM Card

The micro SIM card is a rectangular plastic card that stores your device number, information about your wireless service, and other information such as messages and contacts.

The micro SIM card and its information can be easily damaged by scratching or bending, so be careful when handling, inserting, or removing the card. Keep all SIM cards out of reach of small children.

Caution! Do not bend or scratch the SIM card. Take care when handling, installing, or removing the SIM card, and avoid exposing the SIM card to static electricity, water, or dirt. Keep the SIM card out of reach of small children.

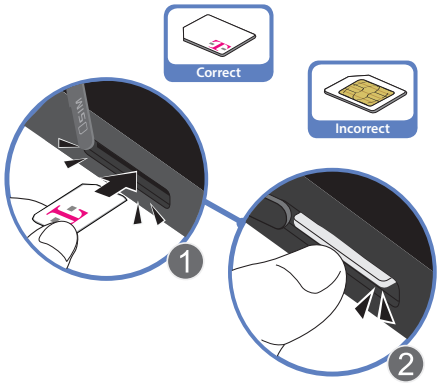
Installing the SIM Card

This device uses a different type of SIM card called a “micro SIM”. Other larger SIM cards will not function or fit within this slot.

Important! Turn the device off before installing or removing the SIM card. To turn the device off, press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** .

1. Open the SIM card slot and carefully insert the SIM Card into the slot, with the logo facing up.
2. Push the SIM card in gently until it clicks into place.

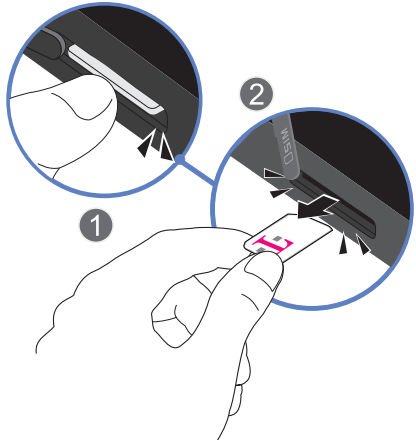
Warning! Do not insert a microSD or other memory card into the SIM card slot.



Removing the SIM Card

Important! Turn the device off before installing or removing the SIM card. To turn the device off, press and hold the Power/Lock Key.

1. Open the SIM card slot and gently push the SIM Card inward to release it.
2. Carefully slide the SIM Card out of the slot.
3. Place the cover back over the open slot.



MicroSD Card

Your device supports an optional (external) microSD™ or microSDHC™ memory card for storage of media such as music, pictures, video and other files. The SD card is designed for use with this and other devices.

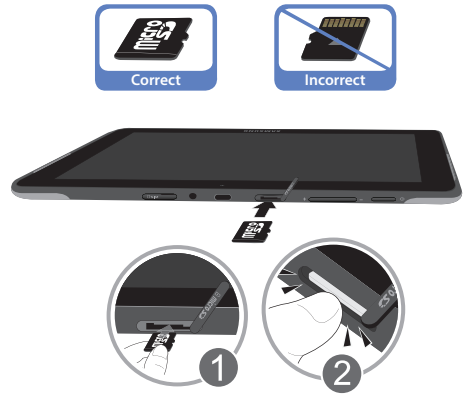
Note: microSD memory cards include capacities of up to 2GB. microSDHC™ memory card types can range from 4GB to up to 64GB.

Note: This device supports up to a 32GB microSDHC memory card.

Installing the microSD Memory Card

1. Locate the microSD card slot on the side of the device and remove the cover.
2. Orient the card with the gold strips facing down.
3. Firmly press the card into the slot and make sure that it catches with the push-click insertion (1).
4. Replace the slot cover. For more information on how to use the SD card, see *"Using the SD Card"* on page 52.

Important! Be sure to align the gold contact pins on the card with the device's contacts.



Removing the microSD Memory Card

1. Remove the slot cover.
2. Firmly press the card into the slot and release it. The card should pop partially out of the slot (2).
3. Remove the card from the slot.
4. Replace the slot cover.

Battery

Your device is powered by a rechargeable, standard Li-Ion battery. A Wall/USB Charger (Charging Head and USB cable) are included with the device for charging the battery.

Note: The battery comes partially charged. You must fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

After the first charge, you can use the device while charging.

Warning! Use only approved charging devices. Approved accessories are designed to maximize battery life. Using other accessories may invalidate your warranty and may cause damage.

Battery Indicator

The Battery icon in the Status Bar shows the battery power level. When battery power is 15% or less, your device prompts you to charge the battery. If you continue to operate the device without charging, the device powers off. For battery use information, see *"About Device"* on page 245.

Tip: Tap the Time field to display battery charge status.

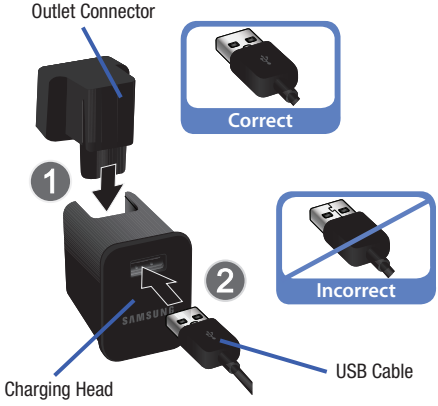
Charging the Battery

Your device comes with a Wall/USB Charger (Outlet Connector, Charging Head, and USB cable) to charge your device from any standard AC power outlet.

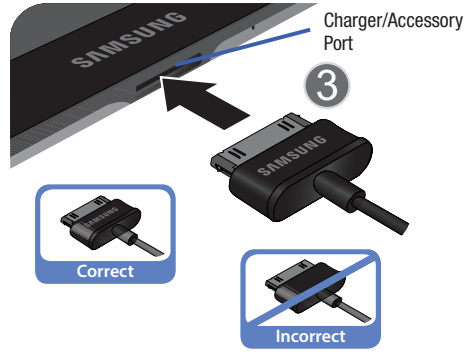
Note: The battery comes partially charged. You must fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

After the first charge, you can use the device while charging.

1. Carefully slide the Outlet Connector into the Charging Head (1). Verify the connection is secure.



2. Insert the USB cable into the Charging Head (2).
3. Insert the USB cable into the device's Charger/ Accessory Port (3).



4. Plug the Charging Head into a standard AC power outlet.

Warning! While the device is charging, if the touch screen does not function due to an unstable power supply, unplug the USB power adapter from the power outlet or unplug the USB cable from the device.

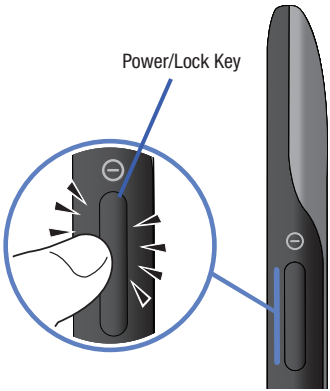
5. When charging is complete, unplug the Charging Head from the power outlet and remove the USB cable from the device.

Turning Your Device On and Off

Turning Your Device On

- Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** .

For more information, refer to *"Unlocking the Device"* on page 21.



Important! When you hold the device in landscape mode, your hand may cover the light sensor which can cause it not to detect light levels properly.

Note: Your device's internal antenna is located along the top back of the device. Do not block the antenna; doing so may affect signal quality and may cause the device to operate at a higher power level than is necessary. For more information, refer to *"Location Services"* on page 224.

Turning Your Device Off

1. Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** .
2. At the prompt, tap **Power off** ( ) ➔ **OK**.

Restarting the Device

1. Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** .
2. At the prompt, tap **Restart** ( ) ➔ **OK**.

Extending Your Battery Life

Active applications, light levels, Bluetooth usage, and GPS functionality all act to drain your battery. The following is a list of helpful tips that can help conserve your battery power:

- Reduce your backlight on time.
- Turn Bluetooth off when not in use.
- Turn Wi-Fi off when not in use.
- Deactivate the GPS when not needed. Most applications using this function will periodically query the GPS satellites for your current location; each query drains your battery.
- Do not wait until your battery is completely depleted before charging your device. Repeating this process of a complete discharge and recharge can over time reduce the storage capacity of any battery.
- Turn off Automatic application sync.
- Use the Power Savings Widget to deactivate hardware functions such as Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, GPS, Synchronization, or LCD brightness setting.
- Check the Battery use screen to review what features or functions have been consuming your battery resources.
- Check the Running Services and close any unnecessary applications.
- Use the Task Manager feature to end/shutdown background applications that are still running. These minimized applications can, over time, cause your device to “slow down”.
- Turn off any streaming services after use (see Running Services).
- Animated wallpapers use processing power, memory, and more power. Change your Live Wallpaper to a non-animated Wallpaper gallery or Gallery image.

Setting Up Your Device

When you first turn on your device, you are asked to set up a few things. To do that, the following screens display. Some screens can be skipped (tap **Skip**) or re-displayed (tap **Back**). Some screens display depending on the options you choose.

Welcome

1. Tap the language field, scroll through the list, and tap the language you want your device to use, such as, English (United States).
2. Tap **Start**.

Wi-Fi

If prompted, make sure the Wi-Fi **OFF / ON** icon is set to ON and choose one of the following options:

Note: If your SIM card is not installed or detecting the network, you will be prompted to establish an active Wi-Fi connection.

- Tap **Add network** to enter a Network SSID that is not listed.
- Tap **Scan** to make sure you have an accurate list of Wi-Fi networks.
- Tap one of the Wi-Fi networks in the list, enter the password, and tap **Connect**. Tap and connect to another Wi-Fi network or tap **Next** to continue.
- Tap **Skip** to perform this task later. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi"* on page 202.

Set Date and Time

1. Tap the time zone field (**GMT+00:00**) and select the correct time zone.
2. Under **Date**, set the date (month, day, year), if necessary.
3. Under **Time**, set the time (hour, minute, and AM or PM), if necessary.
4. Tap **Next**.

Make it Google

Your new device uses your Google account to fully use its Android features, including Gmail, Maps, Navigation, Google Talk, and Google Play™.

The Make it Google screen allows you to create a new Google account or sign in, if you already have a Google account.

Note: If you skipped Wi-Fi setup, the Wi-Fi setup screen displays and you must connect through a Wi-Fi network.

- Tap **Sign in** and then enter the email address and password of your existing account.

  – or –

- Tap **Get an account** or enter the email address and password of your existing account.

  – or –

- Tap **Not now** to perform this task later. For more information, refer to *"Setting Up Your Gmail Account"* on page 84.

Enable Purchases

This screen displays if you signed in to your Google account.

- Enter purchase information for your Google Play account and tap **Save**.

  – or –

  Tap **Skip**.

Backup and Restore

This screen also displays if you signed in to your Google account.

1. Read the backup and restore information.
2. Enable either or both options.
3. Tap **Next**.

   The Restoring screen displays while your information is being restored.

Use Google Location

1. Read the information on the screen and enable either or both of the Google location services.
2. Tap **Next** to continue.

This Tablet Belongs To ...

To personalize the tablet with your name:

1. Tap the First and Last fields and use the on-screen keyboard to enter you first and last name.
2. Tap **Next**.

Google Services

This screen displays if you did not signed in to your Google account. The use of this device is subject to the privacy policy and other terms.

1. Tap **Learn more** to read the privacy policy and other terms.
2. Tap **Next**, if you agree that your device may receive and install updates from Google.

Setup Complete

Congratulations! Your device is set up and ready to use.

- Tap **Finish**. The main Home screen displays.

System Manager Application

1. Follow the on-screen prompt to resize the System Manager application.
2. Read the on-screen System Manager Application information.

Note: This software collects only diagnostic data from your device so that T-Mobile technicians can better troubleshoot issues with your device.

3. Select either **More Info..** (to read additional information) or **Close** to close the message screen.

Important! Selecting **Close** only closes the current description scree and does not disable data collection. To disable data collection, go to **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset** ➔ **Collect diagnostics** and turn off the **Allow Diagnostics** feature. For more information, refer to *"Collect Diagnostics"* on page 240.

Retrieving Your Google Account Password

A Google account password is required for Google applications. If you misplace or forget your Google Account password, follow these instructions to retrieve it:

1. From your computer, use an Internet browser to navigate to http://google.com/accounts.
2. Once the URL loads, click on the **Can't access your account?** link and follow the on-screen instructions.

Using Google Maps

In order to use some applications related to Google Maps, you must first connect Wi-Fi. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi"* on page 202.

You must also enable location services to use Google Maps. Some features require Standalone or Google location services. For more information, refer to *"Location Services"* on page 224.

Creating a Samsung Account

Just as important as setting up and activating a Google account to help provide access to Maps, Latitude, Play Store, etc.. An active Samsung account is required to begin accessing applications such as Media Hub.

Note: The Samsung account application will manage your access to the previously mentioned applications, and there is no longer a need to remember different passwords for each application.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn the **Auto-sync** on or off.
3. Tap **Add account** ➔ **Samsung account**.
4. If you have previously created a Samsung account, tap **Sign in**.

   – or –

   If this is your first time, tap **Create new account**.
5. Tap **Terms and conditions** and **Privacy policy** to read the legal disclaimers and related information.

6. If you agree to the terms, place a green check mark in the **I accept all the terms above** field and tap **Agree**.
7. Enter your the required information and tap **Sign up**.

Important! The password is for your Samsung account, not the password you use for the email address you are entering.
You can use only letters, numbers, !, @, $, %, &, ^, and * for your Samsung account password.

Note: You may be prompted to confirm your credentials via email.

8. Verify your account via email by accessing the email address provided during setup and following the steps outlined to complete your registration.

   – or –

   If you have already setup your email account on the device, tap **Go to Mailbox** and follow the on-screen instructions.

   – or –

   If you have already verified your email address, tap **Activate account**.

Note: Without confirming your email address and following the documented procedures, related applications will not function properly since it is Samsung account that is managing their username and password access.

Task Manager

Your device can run applications simultaneously and some applications run in the background.

Use Task Manager to see which applications are running on your device and to end running applications to extend battery life. You can also uninstall applications from your device and see how much memory is used by applications.

Task Manager Pop-Up

The Task manager pop-up provides information about **Active applications** and includes a **RAM manager**. It also has a link to the Task Manager application.

To access the Task manager pop-up:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Mini App Tray** ➔ (**Task manager**).
2. Tap the **Active applications** tab to view applications running on your device.
3. Tap the **RAM manager** tab to display the amount of Random Access Memory (RAM) currently in use. Tap **Clear memory** to clear inactive and background processes.
4. Tap in the top right corner of the Task manager pop-up to close the application.
5. Tap in the top left corner to display the entire Task Manager application.

Shutting Down a Currently Active Application

1. From a Home screen, tap **Mini App Tray** ➔ (**Task manager**).
2. From the **Active applications** tab, tap to end an application or **End all** to stop all running applications.

Task Manager Application

The Task Manager application provides information about applications, including **Active applications**, **Downloaded**, **RAM manager**, **Storage**, and **Help**.

To access the Task Manager:

1. From a Home screen, tap (**Apps**) ➔ (**Task manager**).

   – or –

   From any screen, touch and hold (**Home**) and then tap in the top left corner.

   – or –

   Tap (**Navigation**) ➔ **Task manager**.
2. Tap **Active applications** to view applications running on your device. Tap **End** to end an application or **End all** to end all running applications.

3. Tap **Downloaded** to view applications installed from Google Play. Tap **Uninstall** to remove an application from your device.
4. Tap **RAM manager** to display the amount of Random Access Memory (RAM) currently in use. Tap **Clear memory** to clear inactive and background processes.
5. Tap **Storage** to view internal (Device memory) and external (SD card) storage memory statistics.
6. Tap **Help** to display on-screen information about various help topics such as extending battery life and understanding the RAM manager.

Galaxy Tab Accessories

To find accessories for your Galaxy Tab:

1. Go to http://www.samsung.com/us/mobile/galaxy-tab-accessories.
2. Use your model number to find compatible accessories.

Securing Your Device

By default, the device locks automatically when the screen times out or you can lock it manually. You can unlock the device using one of the default Unlock screens or, for increased security, use a personal screen unlock pattern.

For more information about creating and enabling a Screen unlock pattern, see *"Screen Lock"* on page 225.

For other settings related to securing your device, see *"Location Services"* on page 224.

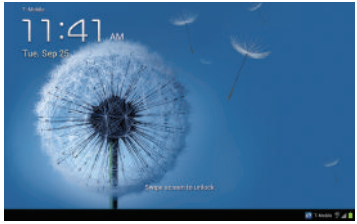
Note: Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this User Manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

Locking the device manually

- Press the **Power/Lock Key** .

Unlocking the Device

1. Press the **Power/Lock Key** .
   The Lock screen is then displayed.
2. Swipe across the screen as shown.
   The last screen you accessed is displayed.



Note: You can customize the Lock screen and set the type of Screen Unlock you want to use (Swipe, Face unlock, Pattern, PIN, or Password). For more information, refer to *"Security"* on page 224.

Troubleshooting

If your device has fatal errors, hangs up, or freezes, you may need to reset the device to regain functionality.

- If your device is frozen and unresponsive, press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** for at least 20 seconds.

Section 2: Understanding Your Device

This section outlines key features of your device and describes the screen and the icons that appear when the device is in use. It also shows how to navigate through the device.

Features

- 10.1-inch WXGA TFT (PLS) LCD touch screen (1280x800)
- Android™ Version 4.0.4, Ice Cream Sandwich
- 1.5 GHz Dual-Core Processor
- Google Play™ Store for access to over 600,000 Apps
- Full HTML Web Browser compatible
- Bluetooth® 4.0 Wireless technology. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 204.
- Built-in Wi-Fi technology (802.11 b/g/n)
- High Speed packet Access Plus (HSPA+) delivering data speeds faster than the current 3G network technology
- 3 Megapixel Camera/Camcorder
- 0.3 Megapixel VGA forward-facing Camera for Video Chat
- Full integration of Google applications (Gmail™, YouTube™, Google Maps™, and Voice Search)
- Messaging Features:
  - Gmail
  - Email (corporate and personal)
  - Google Talk™ (Instant Messaging and Video Chat)
  - SMS and MMS messaging
- Photo Gallery that supports JPEG, PNG, GIF, WBMP, BMP, and AGIF formats
- HD Video Player (720p)
  - Codecs: MPEF4, H.264, H.263, VC-1, DivX, VP8, and WMV 7/8
  - Format: 3GP (MP4), WMV (ASF), AVI (DivX), MKV, FLV, and WEBM
- DivX Certified® to play DivX® video up to HD 720p, including premium content
- Music Player supports MP3, ACC/ACC+, eACC+, WMA, OGG (vorbis), FLAC, AC-3 (only with video), and Vorbis formats
- 1GB RAM memory and 16GB on-board memory, which is used for data storage and access
- Preloaded applications such as AllShare Play™, Google Play™ Books, Google Play™ Store, Polaris® Office, and Samsung Media Hub.

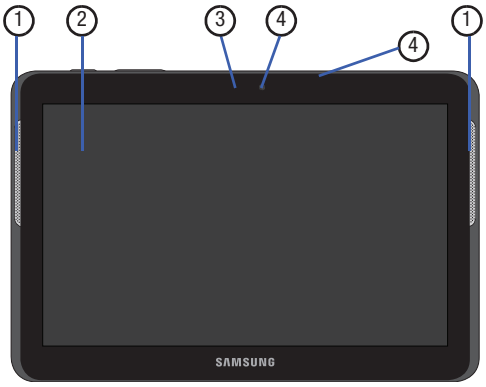
- Smart Remote powered by Peel®
- Slacker® Radio
- Mobile HotSpot and USB Tethering capability. For more information, refer to *"Applications"* on page 45.

Warning! This device does not support some USB storage media devices. For more information, refer to *"Galaxy Tab Accessories"* on page 20.

Front View

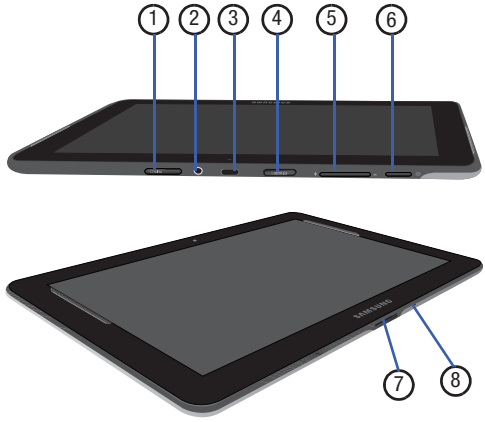
The following items can be found on the front and sides of your device as illustrated.

1. **External Speakers**: Used in music or video playback, notification tones, and for other sounds.
2. **Display Screen**: The orientation of the display screen rotates with the tablet as you turn it. You can turn this feature on and off. For more information, refer to *"Quick Settings"* on page 33.
3. **Light Sensor**: Used to control screen brightness automatically and when taking photos with the Front-facing Camera.
4. **Front-facing Camera Lens**: Used when taking photos.



Side Views

1. **SIM Card slot**: Insertion slot for micro SIM card.
2. **Headset Jack**: Plug in for 3.5 mm headphones.



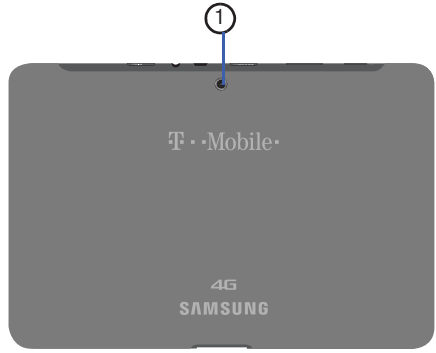
3. **Infrared Blaster**: used to emit infrared signals used for controlling external devices. For more information, refer to *"Smart Remote"* on page 195.

Important! When you hold the device in landscape mode, your hand may cover the light sensor which can cause it not to detect light levels properly.

4. **microSD Card slot**: Insertion slot for microSD card.
5. **Volume Key**: From a Home screen, press to adjust Master Volume. During music playback, press to adjust volume.
6. **Power/Lock Key**: Press and hold to turn the device on or off. Press to lock the device or to wake the screen for unlocking. Press and hold to reveal the **Device options** list.
7. **Charger/Accessory Port**: Plug in a USB cable for charging or to sync music and files.
8. **Microphone**: Used to pick up your voice or audio during recording.

Back View

1. **Camera Lens**: Used when taking photos or recording videos.



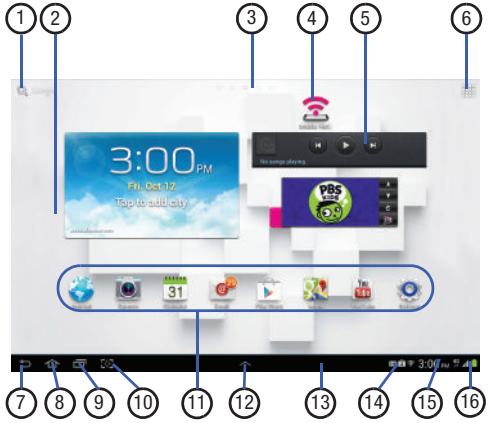
Home Screen

The Home screen is the starting point for using your device.

Note: Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this user manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

1. **Google Search**: Search your tablet and the web by typing or speaking. For more information, refer to *"Search"* on page 194.
2. **Home screen**: The starting point for using your device. Place shortcuts, widgets and other items to customize your device to your needs.
3. **App Shortcuts**: Shortcuts to common applications. For more information, refer to *"App Shortcuts"* on page 41.
4. **Current screen**: Indicates which Home screen is being displayed. For more information, refer to *"Extended Home Screen"* on page 28.
5. **Widgets**: Applications that run on the Home screen. Some widgets are found on the Home screen by default. For more information, refer to *"Widgets"* on page 38.

Tip: The area across the top of the screen is called the Application Bar.



6. **Apps**: Display the Apps screen.
7. **Back**: Return to the previous screen or option.

8. **Home** : Display the central Home screen. Touch and hold to display the Task Manager pop-up.
9. **Navigation** : Open a list of thumbnail images of apps you have worked with recently. Tap an Application to open it. Touch and hold to display the Apps screen. Select the **Task manager** to display the Task Manager.
10. **Quick Launch** : This softkey can be set to launch several different applications. The default function is Screen capture. For more information, refer to *"Quick Launch"* on page 216.
11. **Primary Shortcuts**: Shortcuts to common features. These shortcuts are found on the Home screen by default. For more information, refer to *"Primary Shortcuts"* on page 37.
12. **Mini App Tray** : Shortcuts to apps that you can use anytime, such as your calendar, a memo pad, and a calculator. For more information, refer to *"Mini App Tray"* on page 43.
13. **System Bar**: The area along the bottom of the Home screen where you can find navigation buttons and icons that show notifications, battery power, and connection details.
14. **Notification Icons**: Presents icons to show notifications from the system or from an application. Tap a Notification Icon to display more detail. For a list of icons, see *"Status Bar"* on page 35.
15. **Time**: The current time. For more information, refer to *"Date and Time"* on page 241.
16. **Status Icons**: Indicate the status of your tablet. Tap the Time / Status Icons area to display the Status Details panel. For more information, refer to *"Status Bar"* on page 35.

Extended Home Screen

The Home screen consists of the Home panel, plus four panels that extend beyond the display width to provide more space for adding shortcuts and widgets.

Slide your finger horizontally across the screen to scroll to the left or right side panels. As you scroll, the indicator at the top of the display shows your current position.

Note: The center panel (Home screen) displays when you tap **Home**.

Customizing the Home Screens

To customize the Home screens to suit your preferences:

1. Navigate to one of the Home screen panels.
2. Touch and hold on the screen until the **Home screen** pop-up displays.
3. From the **Add to Home screen** area, select:
   - **Apps and widgets** to add app or widget shortcuts on the Home screen
   - **Folder** to add a folder on a Home screen
   - **Page** to add or remove a Home screen. For more information, refer to *"Adding and Removing Home Screen Panels"* on page 28.

   – or –

   Set a new wallpaper. For more information, refer to *"Wallpapers"* on page 42.

Display Settings

You can customize display screen settings to your preferences. For more information, refer to *"Display Settings"* on page 215.

Adding and Removing Home Screen Panels

Your device can contain up to seven Home screen panels. You can customize the Home screen by removing or adding panels.

Note: The panel in the center position displays when you tap **Home**.

1. From a Home screen, pinch the screen from the left and right side to the center to display the editing screen.

   – or –

   Touch and hold on the screen until the **Home screen** pop-up displays. From the **Add to Home screen** area select **Page**.

2. Use these controls to configure panels:

   Remove: Touch and drag a panel to the Trash Can to remove the panel from the Home screen.

   Add: Tap to add a new panel, up to a total of seven. This option is available when less than seven panels have been added.

   Default Home Page: Tap the Home icon at the upper right corner of a panel to set it as the default home screen.

3. To rearrange the order of panels, touch and drag a panel to a new location.
4. Tap **Back** to return to the Home screen.

Assigning a New Default Home page

1. From a Home screen, pinch the screen from the left and right side to the center to display the editing screen.
2. Tap **Home page** adjacent to an available screen. You are then notified there is a new Default Home page.

Navigating Your Device

Use command buttons and the touch screen to navigate.

Command Buttons

Back

- Tap **Back** to return to the previous screen, option, or step.

Note: When the on-screen keyboard is active, **Close Keyboard** displays.

Home

- Tap **Home** to display the first center Home screen.

Navigation

- Tap **Navigation** to open a list of thumbnail images of apps you have worked with recently.
  - Tap an application to open it. Tap the **Task manager** to display the Task Manager.

Screen Capture

- Touch and hold **Screen Capture** to capture an image of the current screen and edit the image, then tap **Save** to save the image.

  – or –

  Tap **Screen Capture** to capture and add an image of the current screen to the clipboard.

Note: A copy of the screenshot is automatically saved to the clipboard.

Note: The **Quick Launch** key can be modified to launch other applications. For more information, refer to *"Quick Launch"* on page 216.

To view the screen shots:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **My Files**.
2. Tap **Root** ➔ **sdcard** ➔ **Pictures** ➔ **Screenshots**.
3. Select a screen capture file to display it.

Other Buttons

Google Search

- From the Home screen, tap **Google** to search the Web.

  – or –

  From the Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Search**.

Context-Sensitive Menus

Context-sensitive menus offer options for features or screens.

To access context-sensitive menus:

1. Tap **Menu** to display a list of options.
2. Select an option in the list.

Application Bar

The Application Bar is the area along the top of various application screens. It usually contains the Search and Menu icons, as well as other icons that are used to display options and settings.

Screen Navigation

Tap

Tap items to select or launch them. For example:

- Tap the on-screen keyboard to enter characters or text.
- Tap a menu item to select it.
- Tap an application's icon to launch the application.

Touch and Hold

Activate on-screen items. For example:

- Touch and hold a widget on the home screen to move it.
- Touch and hold on a field to display a pop-up menu of options.

Swipe, Flick, or Slide

Swipe, flick, or slide your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. For example:

- Unlocking the screen.
- Scrolling the Home screens or a menu.

Pinch

Use two fingers, such as your index finger and thumb, to make an inward pinch motion on the screen, as if you are picking something up, or an outward motion by sweeping your fingers out.

For example:

- Pinch a photo in Gallery to zoom in.
- Pinch a webpage to zoom in or out.

Notifications

When you receive a notification, the Notification icon displays in the System Bar, to the left of the Time. Notifications indicate the arrival of Gmail, Email, alarms, and more.

Tap a Notification icon for more detail. For example, tap a Gmail Notification icon to see who sent the message.

Tap the Time field to open the Notifications list to view all of your current notifications. Tap a Notification in the list to display the item. For example, tap a Gmail entry to open the Gmail application and view the message.

Most apps that send notifications, such as Gmail and Google Talk, have individual settings that can be configured. See the settings for individual applications in the applicable section of this user manual.

Status Details

This area of the Status Bar displays the current date and time, battery status, Network connectivity, and Wi-Fi connectivity status information.

To open the Status Details:

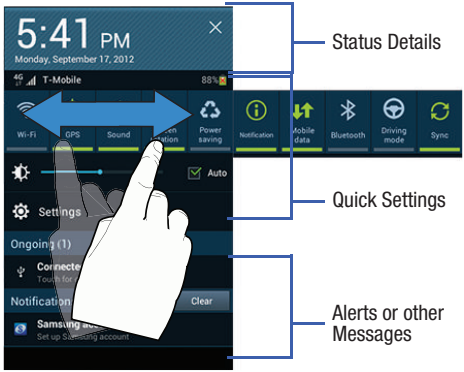
1. Tap the Time area of the Status Bar (1). If you have any current notifications, their summaries are listed below the Status Details. Tap a notification summary to respond to it.

2. Tap an available on-screen option (2).
3. Close the Status Details by tapping any other part of the screen.

Quick Settings

This area allows you to view and control the most common settings for your tablet, and access the complete Settings application.

- Tap the Time area of the System bar to display the Quick Settings pop-up.



Note: It is necessary to scroll across the Quick Setting icons to view all options (ex: Bluetooth).

The Quick Settings are:

- **Wi-Fi**: Tap to enable or disable Wi-Fi. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi"* on page 202.
- **GPS**: Tap to enable or disable the device's GPS functions. For more information, refer to *"Use GPS Satellites"* on page 224.
- **Sound / Mute**: Tap to enable/disable or change sound modes.
- **Screen rotation**: When On the screen rotates automatically from landscape to portrait and vice versa. When Off the screen is fixed in landscape mode. For more information, refer to *"Auto-Rotate Screen"* on page 215.
- **Power saving**: When enabled, your device automatically analyzes the screen and adjusts the brightness to conserve battery power. For more information, refer to *"Power Saving Mode"* on page 217.
- **Notification**: Tap to enable or disable system and application notifications. For more information, refer to *"Notifications"* on page 32.

- **Mobile data**: Shuts off all wireless activity (such as Internet, Email, and YouTube) via mobile networks.
- **Bluetooth**: Tap to enable or disable Bluetooth functionality. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.
- **Driving mode**: New notifications are read aloud when enabled.
- **Sync**: Synchronizes your device with the network. Synchronizes contacts, email, time, and a variety of accounts.
- **Brightness**: Touch and drag the slider to set the brightness or tap **Auto** to allow the device to set brightness automatically based on available light and battery charge status. For more information, refer to *"Brightness"* on page 215.
- **Settings**: Tap to open the Settings application. For more information, refer to *"Settings"* on page 202.

4. Tap **Clear** to remove Notification Icons from the System Bar.
5. Tap a notification entry to display the details.
6. Close the Quick Settings by tapping **X** in the upper, right corner of the Quick Settings pop-up or by tapping outside the Quick Settings screen.

Quick Settings also displays icons under the Notifications heading to alert you to activity on the tablet such as new messages, application downloads, software updates, and more. The following table lists those some of those icons.

Download Successful: A recent application download or update completed successfully.

Google Talk Invitation: Someone has invited you to chat using Google Talk.

Navigation Active: The Navigation App is active. For more information, refer to *"Navigation"* on page 184.

New Email Message: You have new email. Tap Reply to view and answer the email.

New Gmail Message: You have new Gmail. Tap the icon for additional information.

Samsung account: Set up your Samsung account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a Samsung Account"* on page 17.

Lookout Security action: You have new Lookout Security action or notification.

Software update: There is a software update available for this device.

Updates Available: Updates to the applications you have downloaded are available.

Wi-Fi networks available: An open Wi-Fi network is in range.

Status Bar

The Status Bar is part of the System Bar and displays icons to show network status, battery power, and other details.

Battery Level: Shown fully charged.

Charging Indicator: Battery is charging.

Device Power Critical: Battery has only three percent power remaining. At about 15 percent power remaining, a popup is displayed to remind you to charge immediately.

USB Connection Indicator: The device is connected to a computer using a USB cable, but it is not charging. The battery is only charged while connected to a computer, if the device is turned off. When the device is off, press the Power/Lock key to see the battery charging indicator.

Battery Fully Charged: When the battery is fully charged, this indicator is displayed.

USB Connected: Device is connected to a computer using a USB cable. Displays in upper left corner of screen.

Download in progress: An application is being downloaded to the device.

Airplane Mode: Indicates that the Airplane Mode is active, which allows you to use many of your device's features, but it cannot access online information or applications.

Mobile Data Off: Indicates that the Mobile Data is turned Off and the device can not connect with the network.

Set up input methods: When the keyboard is being displayed, tap this icon to display a menu of quick keyboard settings.

Bluetooth Active: Bluetooth is turned on. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Bluetooth Connected: Bluetooth is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Play Music App: A song is playing in the Play Music app. Tap the Music icon or tap the Status Details to see the song title and music player controls. For more information, refer to *"Play Music"* on page 125.

Music player: A song is playing. Tap the Music icon or tap the Status Details to see the song title and music player controls. For more information, refer to *"Playing Music"* on page 137.

3G Active: Displays when connected to the 3G network.

3G Communicating: Displays when your device is communicating with the 3G network.

4G Active: Displays when connected to the HSPA+ network.

4G Communicating: Displays when your device is communicating with the HSPA+ network.

Wi-Fi In Range: Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.

Wi-Fi Active: Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Wi-Fi Direct: Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and your tablet is connected to another device. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi Direct"* on page 152.

Mobile AP HotSpot: Displays when the Mobile AP HotSpot feature is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot"* on page 158.

USB Connected: Device is connected to a computer using a USB cable. Displayed in upper left corner of screen.

USB Tethering Mode: Displays when the USB Tethering mode is active and communicating. For more information, refer to *"USB Tethering"* on page 157.

SD card Ready: Displays when the external SD card (internal microSD) has been disconnected (unmounted) from the device and is now ready for either removal or formatting. For more information, refer to *"Understanding Your Device"* on page 22.

SD card Preparing for Mounting: Displays when the External SD card is being prepared for mounting to the device. This is required for communication with the External SD card.

SD card Improperly removed: Displays when the microSD card has been unexpectedly or improperly removed.

GPS Active: Displays when GPS is active.

Alarm Set: Displays when you set an alarm to ring at a specified time. For more information, refer to *"Alarm"* on page 162.

Event: This is a notification for one or more events. For more information, refer to *"Creating an Event or Task"* on page 168.

Screenshot Captured: A screenshot has been captured. For more information, refer to *"Screen Capture"* on page 30.

Power Saving Mode: Indicates that your device is automatically making adjustments to conserve battery power. For more information, refer to *"Power Saving Mode"* on page 217.

Primary Shortcuts

Primary Shortcuts appear at the bottom of the main Home screen.

Tip: The main Home screen is usually the center Home screen.

The default Primary Shortcuts are: Media Hub, Maps, Email, Internet, Play Store, and Zinio.

For more information, refer to *"Applications"* on page 45.

Application shortcuts can be added to any Home screen. For more information, refer to *"App Shortcuts"* on page 41.

Widgets

When you first turn on your tablet, there are various widgets on the center Home screen. They can also appear on the Home screens to the left and right of the center Home screen.

Widgets are self-contained applications that you can place on the Home screens to access your favorite features.

Adding Widgets to a Home screen

1. Navigate to the Home screen on which you want to place the Widget.
2. From the Home screen, tap **Apps**.
3. Select the **Widgets** tab.

Note: Swipe across the screen horizontally to view all Widgets.

4. Touch and hold the widget's icon, then slide your finger where you want to place the icon and release it.

Note: There must be room on the screen where you want to place the widget, otherwise the widget will not add to the Home screen.

5. Tap **Back** to return to the Home screen.

Removing Widgets

- Touch and hold the Widget until the **Delete** icon displays, then drag the Widget toward the top of the screen and drop it over the **Delete** icon.

Widget Options

The following widgets are available:

- **Alarm**: Display the current alarm events.
- **Application monitor**: This application acts as a task manager that monitors and controls active or downloaded programs, RAM, or Storage. For more information, refer to *"Task Manager"* on page 18.
- **Bonus Apps**: Displays free T-Mobile services and apps that are compatible with your device.
- **Book**: Tap this widget and then tap a book for quick access to the book. For more information, refer to *"Play Books"* on page 186.
- **Calendar**: Display a calendar. For more information, refer to *"Calendar"* on page 166.
- **Clock (funky)**: Display a funky, analog clock.
- **Clock (modern)**: Display a modern, analog clock.

- **Contact (1x1)**: Display a shortcut to one of your contact entries. For more information, refer to *"Contacts"* on page 66.
- **Digital clock**: Display the digital time, the day, and the date.
- **Email**: Display your email inbox. For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 88.
- **Gmail**: Send and receive email with Gmail, Google's web-based email. For more information, refer to *"Gmail"* on page 84.
- **Google Play Books**: Read eBooks from the web-based Google Play Books service. For more information, refer to *"Play Books"* on page 186.
- **Google Play Music**: Use this widget to control the playback of songs playing in the Music app. For more information, refer to *"Options While Selecting a Song"* on page 128.
- **Google Search**: Display a Google Search bar. For more information, refer to *"Search"* on page 194.
- **Google+ posts**: Display a shortcut to Google+ posts. For more information, refer to *"Google+"* on page 141.
- **Lookout Security**: Provides read access to the Lookout SEcurity application and related information. For more information, refer to *"Lookout Security"* on page 175.
- **Media Hub**: Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and watch from the convenience of anywhere. For more information, refer to *"Media Hub"* on page 122.
- **Memo**: Create and save a memo on a Home screen. For more information, refer to *"Memo"* on page 180.
- **MobileLife**: Provides access to various MobileLife applications such as Calendar and Shopping List. Options include: MobileLife Calendar(2x3)(3x3) (4x2) (4x4), MobileLife Shopping List(3x3)(4x4), MobileLife To Do List(3x3)(4x4).
- **Mono audio**: Enable mono sound when listening to audio with one earbud.
- **Music Player**: The Music Player allows you to play music files that you have stored on your device and memory card. You can also create playlists. For more information, refer to *"Music Player"* on page 133.
- **Music playlist**: Choose a music playlist to access from a home screen. For more information, refer to *"Playing, Renaming, or Deleting a Playlist"* on page 132.

- **Picture frame**: Select one or more pictures and then tap the arrow on the widget for a slide show. For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 171.
- **Play Store**: Download applications from the Google Play™ Store. For more information, refer to *"Play Store"* on page 189.
- **S Bookmark**: Create a bookmark for a favorite website. For more information, refer to *"Using Bookmarks"* on page 144.
- **S Bookmarks**: Create bookmarks for your favorite websites. For more information, refer to *"Using Bookmarks"* on page 144.
- **S Planner (month)**: Creates a month view of your current calendar events. For more information, refer to *"Calendar"* on page 166.
- **S Planner (task)**: Creates a on-screen display of your current and upcoming tasks. For more information, refer to *"Calendar"* on page 166.
- **S Suggest**: Recommends popular applications, when your device is connected to a Wi-Fi, that are guaranteed to be compatible with your device. For more information, refer to *"S Suggest"* on page 193.
- **Settings shortcut**: Allows you to create a shortcut to a particular Settings item. For more information, refer to *"Settings"* on page 202.
- **Slacker Radio**: Access your social networks, like Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn all in one place. For more information, refer to *"Slacker Radio"* on page 194.
- **Software update**: This shortcut makes updating your device software even easier. For more information, refer to *"Software Update"* on page 246.
- **T-Mobile TV (large)**: Creates a large preview window of the T-Mobile TV application content. For more information, refer to *"T-Mobile TV"* on page 140.
- **Traffic**: Enter a name for the widget and a destination, and then tap **Save**. Tap the widget to use the Traffic component of the Maps application. For more information, refer to *"Maps"* on page 176.
- **Video Player**: Play and manage videos stored on your tablet. For more information, refer to *"Video Player"* on page 113.
- **Weather**: Display the forecast from AccuWeather. Touch the widget to choose locations.
- **Yahoo! Finance**: Search for and add stocks. For more information, refer to *"Yahoo! Finance"* on page 198.
- **Yahoo! News**: Display current news and much more from Yahoo!

- **YouTube**: Search YouTube and watch videos. For more information, refer to *"YouTube"* on page 200.
- **Zinio**: provides quick-access to your Zinio™ digital magazines. For more information, refer to *"Zinio"* on page 201.

App Shortcuts

Use App Shortcuts for quick access to applications or features, such as Email or other applications.

Adding Shortcuts to a Screen

1. Navigate to the Home screen on which you want to place the App Shortcut.
2. Tap **Apps**.

   – or –

   Touch and hold on the screen until the **Home screen** options pop-up displays then from the **Add to Home** area, tap **Apps and widgets**.
3. Tap the **Apps** tab.
4. Touch and hold the application icon, then slide your finger where you want to place the icon and release it. For a list of applications, see *"Apps Screen"* on page 44.
5. Touch and hold the App Shortcut and then drag the application icon to reposition it on the Home screen.

Removing App Shortcuts

1. Touch and hold the App Shortcut until the **Delete** icon displays.
2. Drag the App Shortcut toward the top of the screen and drop it over the **Delete** icon.

Wallpapers

You can choose a picture to display on the Home Screen, Lock screen, or on both the Home and Lock screens. Choose from preloaded wallpaper images or select a photo you have downloaded or taken with the Camera.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold on the screen.

   The **Home screen** options pop-up displays.

2. Tap **Set wallpaper for** and then select **Home screen**, **Lock screen**, or **Home and lock screens**.

   The **Select wallpaper from** pop-up displays the following options:

   - **Gallery**: Access the Gallery to select a photo. Tap a photo to select it. Crop and resize the picture, if desired. Tap **Done** to save the picture as wallpaper or **Cancel** to exit.
   - **Live wallpapers**: Choose from pre-loaded interactive animated wallpapers. Tap a wallpaper to see an example. If available, tap **Settings** to view options for the selection. Tap **Set wallpaper** to save your choice or tap **Back** to return to the Live wallpapers menu.
   - **Wallpapers**: Choose from pre-loaded wallpaper images. Tap an image to view it. Tap **Set wallpaper** to save it as wallpaper or tap **Back** to return to the Home screen.

Note: Live wallpapers is not available for the Lock screen.

Mini App Tray

There are shortcuts available that link to apps that you might need while working in other apps, such as Alarm, Calculator, Calendar, Email, Music player, Pen memo, Task manager, and World clock. In some cases, these shortcuts are actually links to the part of the app you need most and they contain a link to the actual app where you can use other functions.

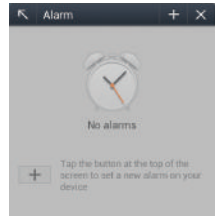
1. From any screen, tap **Mini App Tray** at the bottom, center of the screen. The Mini App Tray icons display.

2. Tap **Edit** at the bottom-right side of the tray to customize the Mini App Tray. For more information, refer to *"Customizing the Mini App Tray"* on page 44.

   – or –

   Tap one of the icons to display a mini app pop-up.

   The pop-up varies depending on the application. Various controls display at the top of the pop-up and other information is displayed in the body of the pop-up.



3. Tap **Done**.
4. Tap **Mini App Tray** at the bottom and select an available app.
5. Tap options (such as +) to create new app items (such as alarms or events).
6. Tap items in the body of the pop-up, such as an email entry or keys on the Calculator.
7. Tap to link to the application. For more information, refer to *"Applications"* on page 45.
8. Tap to close the mini app pop-up.

Customizing the Mini App Tray

You can choose applications to display on the Mini App Tray and arrange them in any order.

1. From any screen, tap **Mini App Tray** at the bottom, center of the screen.
2. Tap **Edit** at the right side of the tray.
3. Touch and drag apps in and out of the tray or to another position in the tray.
4. Tap **Done** to save your changes.

Apps Screen

The **Apps screen** holds all applications installed on your wireless device. Applications that you download and install from the Play Store™ or from the Web are also added to a Home screen.

The Apps icons are arranged in a customizable grid.

To arrange the Apps icons in alphabetical order:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **View type** ➔ **Alphabetical grid**.

To manually change the order of the icons on the Apps screen:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Edit**.
3. Touch and hold an icon and drag it to a new position.
4. Tap **Save** to save the changes.

You can place shortcuts to applications on the Home screen for quick access to the application. For more information, refer to *"App Shortcuts"* on page 41.

To view your downloaded applications:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Downloaded applications**.
3. Tap an icon on the **Downloaded applications** screen to launch the application.

   – or –

   Add an App Shortcut to a Home screen by dragging the App icon onto the Home Screen. For more information, refer to *"App Shortcuts"* on page 41.

Applications

The following is an alphabetical list of the applications that come preloaded on your device.

Alarm

Schedule alarms to remind you of appointments or events, or as a wake-up.

For more information, refer to *"Alarm"* on page 162.

AllShare Play

Share your on-device media content with other external devices using DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance) and built-in AllShare Play technology.

For more information, refer to *"AllShare Play"* on page 164.

Calculator

The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions to solve simple arithmetic problems and advanced operators to solve more complex problems.

For more information, refer to *"Calculator"* on page 166.

Calendar

Record events and appointments to manage your schedule.

For more information, refer to *"Calendar"* on page 166.

Camera

Take photos or record videos. A shortcut to Camera displays on the Home screen by default.

For more information, refer to *"Camera"* on page 170.

Contacts

Save and manage contact information for your friends and colleagues. For more information, refer to *"Contacts"* on page 170.

Downloads

Files, apps, and other items you download in Internet, Gmail, Email, or in other ways, are stored on your tablet's internal storage. Use the Downloads app to view, reopen, or delete what you have downloaded.

For more information, refer to *"Downloads"* on page 170.

Email

Send and receive email from your device.

For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 88.

Gallery

View and manage photos stored on your device.

For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 116.

Game Base

Provides access to a game rental and purchase services for compatible T-Mobile Android devices.

For more information, refer to *"Game Base"* on page 171.

Gmail

Send and receive email with Gmail, Google's Web-based email.

For more information, refer to *"Gmail"* on page 84.

Google+

Share updates and see what is going on around you with Google+.

For more information, refer to *"Google+"* on page 141.

Internet

Access the Internet. A shortcut to Internet displays on the Home screen by default.

For more information, refer to *"Internet"* on page 141.

Latitude

Use Google Latitude to locate your friends on a map and share or hide your location.

For more information, refer to *"Latitude"* on page 172.

Local

Displays company locations as markers on Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

For more information, refer to *"Local"* on page 174.

Lookout Security

Lookout™ provides mobile device-specific security features that are coupled with a minimal performance hit.

For more information, refer to *"Lookout Security"* on page 187.

Maps

Launches a Web-based dynamic map that helps you find local businesses, locate friends, view maps and get driving directions.

For more information, refer to *"Maps"* on page 176.

Media Hub

Browse the latest movies and TV shows, then rent or purchase the media for viewing on your device.

For more information, refer to *"Media Hub"* on page 122.

Memo

Create text memos and use Bluetooth to send memos.

For more information, refer to *"Memo"* on page 180.

Messaging

Provides access to text and multimedia messaging (SMS and MMS).

For more information, refer to *"Creating and Sending Messages"* on page 76.

Messenger

With Google Messenger™, you can bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation.

For more information, refer to *"Messenger"* on page 101.

Mobile HotSpot

Provides access to the Tethering and portable HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or mobile hotspot functionality.

For more information, refer to *"Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot"* on page 158.

More for Me

Provides customized offers, discounts and deals right to your device.

For more information, refer to *"More for Me"* on page 182.

Music Player

Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

For more information, refer to *"Music Player"* on page 133.

My Files

Find, view and manage files stored on an optional installed memory card.

For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 182.

Navigation

Use Google Maps Navigation™ to search for locations, with turn-by-turn directions.

For more information, refer to *"Navigation"* on page 184.

Photo editor

To perfect any photos stored on your tablet, use Photo editor to crop, rotate, resize, adjust color and contrast, and much more.

For more information, refer to *"Photo Editor"* on page 185.

Play Books

Read eBooks from the web-based Google Play Books service.

For more information, refer to *"Play Books"* on page 186.

Play Magazines

With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favorite magazines and have them available to read on your device at any time or any place.

For more information, refer to *"Play Magazines"* on page 188.

Play Movies & TV

Use the Play Movies & TV app to view movies you rent from Google Play™ Movies & TV or play any of your personal videos stored on your tablet.

For more information, refer to *"Play Movies & TV"* on page 124.

Play Music

Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer with the Music app.

For more information, refer to *"Play Music"* on page 125.

Play Store

Browse, download, and install Android applications. A shortcut to Play Store displays on the Home screen by default.

For more information, refer to *"Play Store"* on page 189.

Polaris Office

This application is a Microsoft Office compatible office suite. This application provides a central place for managing your documents online or offline.

For more information, refer to *"Polaris Office"* on page 191.

Pro Apps

Provides access to compatible productivity tools.

For more information, refer to *"Pro Apps"* on page 192.

S Suggest

Provides on-screen recommendations for applications that are specifically supported and made for use on your device.

For more information, refer to *"S Suggest"* on page 193.

Samsung Apps

Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more.

For more information, refer to *"Samsung Apps"* on page 193.

Search

Use the Google search engine to search the Web.

For more information, refer to *"Search"* on page 194.

Settings

Configure your device to your preferences.

For more information, refer to *"Settings"* on page 202.

Slacker Radio

Slacker® Radio offers free, internet radio for mobile devices.

For more information, refer to *"Slacker Radio"* on page 194.

Smart Remote

Allows you to locate programming, watch it on your tv, and then control your entertainment system with gestures from the device.

For more information, refer to *"Smart Remote"* on page 195.

T-Mobile My Account

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

For more information, refer to *"T-Mobile My Account"* on page 195.

T-Mobile TV

Allows you to watch live mobile TV on your device. This application is a subscription service.

For more information, refer to *"T-Mobile TV"* on page 140.

Talk

Chat with other Google Talk users. For more information, refer to *"Google Talk"* on page 97.

Video Maker

Create a movie, using a video you download or record with Camera, or by combining images. Add audio, to create a soundtrack, then share your movie with your friends.

For more information, refer to *"Video Maker"* on page 196.

Video Player

Play and manage videos stored on your tablet.

For more information, refer to *"Video Player"* on page 113.

VPN Client

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

For more information, refer to *"VPN Client"* on page 197.

World Clock

View the date and time in any time zone.

For more information, refer to *"World Clock"* on page 197.

YouTube

View and upload YouTube videos, right from your device. For more information, refer to *"YouTube"* on page 200.

Zinio

Launches a digital magazine reader. Zinio® has transformed your favorite print magazines into digital format. For more information, refer to *"Zinio"* on page 201.

Section 3: Memory Card

Your device lets you use a microSD™ (SD) or microSDHC™ card (also referred to as a memory card) to expand available memory space. This secure digital card enables you to exchange images, music, and data between SD-compatible devices. This section addresses the features and options of your device's SD functionality. The device has a USB SD card mode.

- microSD card storage: up to 2GB in size
- SDHC card storage: up to 32GB in size

Using the SD Card

There are several methods for using the SD card:

1. Connecting to your PC to store files (such as music, videos, or other types of files and media).
2. To activate the camera, video, music player, and other dependant media or applications.

Important! Your device can support SDHC cards up to 32GB capacity.

SD card Overview

After mounting an SD card in the device you can use your computer to access and manage the SD card.

Important! If access to the external SD card is not available, download and install the USB drivers.

microSD Icon Indicators

The following icons show your microSD card connection status at a glance:

- has been disconnected (unmounted) from the device and is now ready for either removal or formatting.

- the card is being prepared for use and for mounting.

- the card has been unexpectedly or improperly removed.

Important! DO NOT remove a microSD card while the device is accessing or transferring files. Doing so will result in loss or damage of data. Make sure your battery is fully charged before using the microSD card. Your data may become damaged or lost if the battery runs out while you are using the microSD card.

Mounting the SD Card

To store photos, music, videos, and other applications. You must mount (install) the SD card prior to use. Mounting the SD card establishes a USB connection with your computer.

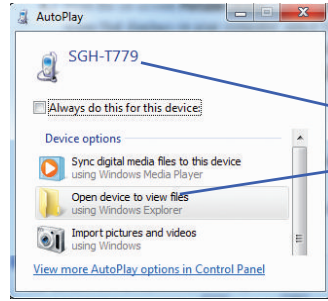
1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.
2. Tap **Mount SD card**.

Connecting to the SD card

1. Insert the SD card into the external, SD card slot. For more information, refer to *"MicroSD Card"* on page 9.
2. Verify the card is properly mounted.

Important! Verify the USB debugging feature is not enabled (**Settings** ➔ **Developer options**).

3. Connect the USB cable from the device to the computer. As soon as the connection is established a drive letter is assigned to the device's storage device.
4. From the on-screen **Portable Device** or **AutoPlay** pop-up menu that displays on your computer, select the storage location. Choose from either **Card** (built-in memory) or **Tablet** (location of microSD card).



5. Remove the USB cable from the tablet to close the USB connection between the device and your computer.

Unmounting the SD card

Unmounting the SD card prevents corruption and damage to the SD card while removing it from the slot.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.
2. Tap **Unmount SD card**.
3. If prompted with an **Unmount SD card** dialog, read the information and tap **OK** to continue the unmounting process.
4. When the "**SD card will be unmounted**" message displays and the **Mount SD card** now appears in the menu list, remove the SD card. For more information, refer to *"Removing the microSD Memory Card"* on page 8.

SD card Memory Status

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**. The available memory displays under the Total space and Available space headings.

Erasing Files from the SD card

1. Ensure the SD card is mounted.
2. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.
3. Tap **Format SD card** ➔ **Format SD card** ➔ **Delete all** to format the SD card. The SD card formats and erases all the data stored on it.

Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Factory data reset**. This action erases all data from your device except current system software and bundled applications, or SD card files such as music or photos.

Note: This feature provides an option to format the internal USB storage, not the microSD card.

3. Tap **Reset device** ➔ **Delete all**.

Section 4: Entering Text

This section describes how to enter words, letters, punctuation and numbers when you need to enter text.

Text Input Methods

Your device offers three text input methods.

- **Google voice typing**: You can use your voice to enter text using the Voice input feature. Your device recognizes your speech and enters text for you. For more information, refer to *"Using Speech Recognition"* on page 64.
- **Samsung keyboard**: The Samsung keyboard is also a virtual QWERTY keypad that allows you to enter text by tapping keys on the screen. The Samsung keyboard includes predictive text, which matches your key taps to common words so that you can select the word to enter it into your text.
- **Swype**: Swype™ is a new text input method that allows you to enter words by gliding your finger over the virtual QWERTY keypad, lifting your finger between words. You can also enable Word prediction, which matches your key taps to common words.

Changing the Input Method

When entering text, you can select the text input method.

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.
2. Select an input method to activate it.
3. Tap to display that input method's settings.

For more information, refer to *"Language and Input"* on page 233.

Samsung Keyboard

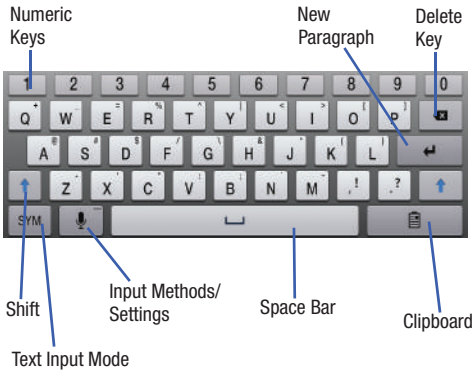
Your device uses a virtual QWERTY keyboard for text entry called the *Samsung keyboard*. Use the keyboard to enter letters, punctuation, numbers, and other characters into text entry fields or applications. Access the keyboard by tapping any text entry field.

The keyboard displays at the bottom of the screen. By default, when you rotate the device, the screen orientation updates to display the keyboard at the bottom of the screen.

Using the Samsung Keyboard

The Samsung keyboard is a custom virtual QWERTY keyboard, featuring predictive text. Input characters by tapping the on-screen keys with your finger or use speech recognition.

As you enter characters, predictive text matches your key taps to common words and displays them. Select a word from the display to insert it into your text. For more information, refer to *"Using Predictive Text"* on page 58.



Entering Text using Different Input Options

Although the default text input method with the Samsung keyboard is to use the on-screen keys you have other options.

Note: To access additional settings, touch and hold the **Input Methods** button , then tap (**Settings**) to select it from the available options.

1. From within an active message, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap (**Input Methods**) to use the default Voice typing input method to convert your spoken words to on-screen text.

   – or –

   Touch and hold to select from other input methods such as:

   - **Handwriting** to launch an on-screen handwriting area that can be used to convert on-screen patterns (text) to text.
   - **Settings** to access the Samsung keyboard settings menu.

Configuring the Keyboard

To configure the Samsung keyboard to your preferences:

- Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar and tap adjacent to **Samsung keyboard**. The Set up input methods pop-up displays. For more information, refer to *"Configuring the Samsung keyboard"* on page 234.

Entering Upper and Lower Case Letters

The default case is lower case (abc). Enter upper and lower case alphabet letters by tapping **Shift** to toggle the case, before tapping the letter key(s).

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.
2. Tap ABC to configure the keyboard for ABC mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows SYM.
   - Tap once to switch from abc to Abc mode.
   - Uppercase mode is enabled, the Shift key background turns blue.

Note: After typing an initial uppercase character, the key changes to and all letters that follow are in lower case.

All lowercase

Displays when the next character is entered in lowercase. Pressing this while in 123 mode, reveals additional numeric-symbols keys.

Initial Uppercase

Displays when the first character of each word is entered as uppercase but all subsequent characters are lowercase.

All Uppercase

Displays when all characters will be entered as uppercase characters.

Entering Symbols and Numbers

To enter a number, tap SYM, then tap the corresponding key.

To enter common symbols, tap SYM to switch to Symbols mode, then select the corresponding key.

There are three pages of symbols. Tap 1/2 to switch to the next page.

While in ABC mode, touch and hold a vowel key (A, E, I, O, U, or Y) or the C, N, or S key to open a small window where you can chose an accented vowel or other alternate letter. Slide to the letter until it is highlighted, and release.

Touch and hold the Period key (.) to open a small window with a set of common symbols.

Using Predictive Text

This system allows you to take advantage of next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keyboards.

- Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar and tap adjacent to **Samsung keyboard**. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.

  – or –

  From the on-screen keyboard, touch and hold to select **Settings**.

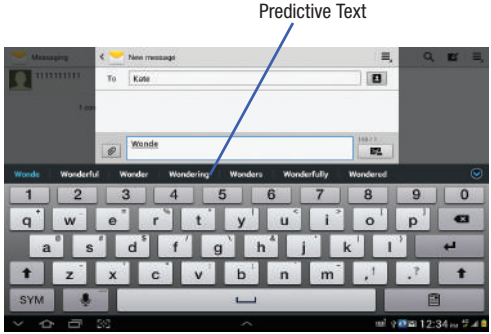
  The Samsung keyboard settings screen displays.

3. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn **Predictive text** on.
4. Tap the **Predictive text** field to modify the associated settings. For more information, refer to *"Configuring the Samsung keyboard"* on page 234.

Note: The Predictive text option is available only when ABC mode has been selected.

5. Begin typing a word.

   A list of word options displays.



6. Tap and to view additional word options.
7. Continue typing your message. The Predictive text mode can be used in portrait or landscape mode.

Adding Words To Your Word List

To add more word options:

- Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar and tap adjacent to **Samsung keyboard**. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.

  – or –

  From the on-screen keyboard, touch and hold to select **Settings**.

  The Samsung keyboard settings screen displays.

8. Tap **Predictive text** ➔ **Auto substitution list**.
9. Tap **Add**.
10. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the word.
11. Tap **Done**.

Deleting Words From Your Word List

To delete words from your word list:

1. Tap **Predictive text** ➔ **Auto substitution list**.
2. Tap **Delete**.
3. Place a check mark adjacent to those existing words you want to delete or tap **Select all** ➔ **Delete**.
4. Tap **Delete**.

Editing Text

You can edit the text you enter in text fields by cutting, copying, or pasting text. These operations can be performed within and across apps. However, some apps do not support editing some or all of the text displayed while others may offer their own way to select text.

Editing Existing Text

To edit text that you have entered:

1. Tap the text at the point you want to edit.
   The **Cursor** displays at the point you tapped.
2. Touch and drag the **Cursor** to a better position, if necessary.
3. Enter additional text or delete text by repeatedly tapping the **Delete** key.

Copying, Deleting, or Replacing Text

To select and copy, delete, or replace text:

1. Touch and hold the text or word you want to select.
   The selected text is highlighted with a tab at each end of the selection.
2. Touch and drag either tab to select more or less text.

Tip: Tap **Select all** in the Application bar (top of the screen) to select all text in the field. Select an option and the tap on another area of the screen.

---

3. Depending on the action you want to take for the selected text, in the Application bar tap:
   - **Select all** to highlight all text in the field.
   - **Cut** to remove the selected text.
   - **Copy** to save the selected text to the clipboard.
   - **Paste** to paste the text currently in the clipboard.
   - **Clipboard** to view what is currently in the clipboard.

   – or –

Enter text by typing or speaking to replace the selection with what you want typed.

– or –

Tap the **Delete** key to delete the selected text.

Pasting Text

To paste previously copied text:

1. Tap the text at the point you want to paste the copied text.

   The **Cursor** displays at the point you tapped.

2. Tap the cursor. A pop-up displays.
3. Tap **Paste** from within the pop-up.

To paste text directly from the clipboard:

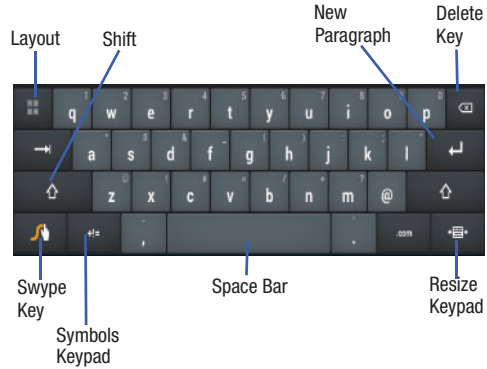
1. Tap the **Clipboard** key to display the text saved to the clipboard.
2. Tap a text block to paste that text where the **Cursor** is positioned.

Closing the Keypad

- Tap **Close Keypad**.

Entering Text Using Swype

Swype™ is a new way to enter text on touch screens. Instead of tapping each key, use your finger to trace over each letter of a word. For each word, place your finger on the first letter and glide to the subsequent letters, lifting on the last letter.



The following example shows how to enter the word “this”. Put your finger down on the “t” and, without lifting, glide it to the “h”, then to the “i”, then over to the “s”.

Here are a few tips to get you started:

- **Auto-spacing**: When you finish a word, just lift your finger and start the next word.
- **Double letters**: Just “scribble” on the key.
- **Auto-capitalization**: Swype recognizes and capitalizes the first word of sentences. If you want to capitalize a word that is not at the beginning of a sentence, just glide above the keypad before gliding over the next letter.
- **Contractions**: Swype recognizes most words that include an apostrophe, just swype the letters of the word, including the apostrophe.
- **Punctuation**: Touch and hold a key to view a punctuation menu and make a selection.
- **Accented characters**: Just glide through the letters of the word. Swype usually recognizes the word and correctly accents the letters.
- **Error correction**: If you make a mistake, double-tap on the word you want to change.

Configuring Swype

Configure Swype to your preferences.

- While entering text, touch and hold the **Swype Key** to display the Settings screen. For more information, refer to *“Configuring the Swype Keypad”* on page 235.

Swype Help

You can get tips and help about using Swype.

1. Touch and hold the **Swype Key.**
   The Swype Settings screen displays.
2. Tap **How to Swype** and then tap the desired topic.

Entering Symbols and Numbers

Using the Swype Keypad:

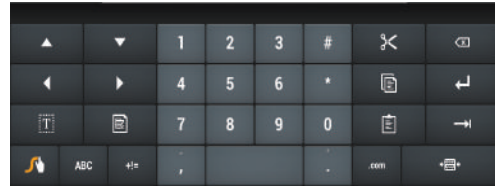
- Touch and hold on a key to enter the symbol or number at the top of the key.
- Touch and hold on a key until a menu of all characters available on that key appears, then tap a character to enter it.
- For more symbols, tap **Shift**, then tap the corresponding key.
- Tap ABC to display the alphabetic keypad.
- Tap +!= to switch to the numeric keypad and quickly enter numbers and mathematical operators.
- Tap +!= to switch to the symbols keypad. Tap to view additional symbols.

Editing Keypad

The Editing Keypad provides a quick way to move the cursor and highlight text. If the application in which you are working supports editing, you can cut, copy, or paste highlighted text.

To display the Editing keypad:

1. In a single motion, swype from the **Swype Key** to the +!= **Numeric Key**.
   The Editing keypad is displayed.



2. Select an edit key.
3. Tap to resize the Editing Keypad for easier use.

Using Speech Recognition

You can use your voice to enter text using the Voice input feature, which lets you enter text by speaking. The Samsung keypad recognizes your speech and enters text for you.

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.
2. Tap **Google voice typing** to enable **Voice Input**.

   For more information, refer to *"Language and Input"* on page 233.
3. At the **Listening** prompt, speak clearly and distinctly into the microphone.

   The software converts your voice to text, which is displayed in the message.
4. Keep speaking to add more test.
5. Tap **Done** to display the Samsung keyboard.

Note: The Speech Recognition feature works best when you break your message down into smaller segments.

For more information, refer to *"Configure Google Voice Typing"* on page 237.

Section 5: Contacts and Accounts

This section explains how to manage contacts and accounts.

Accounts

Your device can synchronize with a variety of accounts. With synchronization, information on your device is updated with any information that changes in your accounts.

- **Samsung account**: Add your Samsung account. For more information, refer to *"Creating a Samsung Account"* on page 17.
- **Email**: Add an Email account to sync Contacts. For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 88.
- **Facebook (fro synching)**: Add your Facebook account to sync Contacts.
- **Google**: Add your Google account to sync your Contacts, Calendar, and Gmail. For more information, refer to *"Gmail"* on page 84.
- **LDAP**: Allows you to setup a connection to an "LDAP-aware" servers to look up entries in a wide variety of ways. LDAP servers index all the data in their entries, and "filters" may be used to select just the person or group you want, and return just the information you want.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**: Add your Exchange account to sync Contacts, Calendar, and Email.

Setting Up Your Accounts

Set up and manage your synchronized accounts with the **Accounts and sync** setting.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap **Add account**, then select an account type.
3. Follow the prompts to enter your account credentials to complete the set-up process.
4. The device communicates with account servers to set up your account. When complete, your account displays in the **Manage accounts** area of the **Accounts and sync** screen.

Contacts

Store contact information for your friends, family, and colleagues to quickly access information or to send a message.

To access Contacts:

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.

Note: If you have not already set up a Google account, you will be prompted to set one up before you create any new Contacts entries.

Creating Contacts

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts** ➔ .
2. Tap an account or **SIM/Device**.
3. Tap the Photo ID to set up a photo to identify the contact.
   - **Picture**: Choose a photo from the Gallery.
   - **Take picture**: Display the Camera and take a photo of the contact.
4. Tap contact fields to display the keyboard and enter information:

Tip: Tap the screen and swipe up or down to display additional fields.

- **Name**: Enter a first name for the contact. Tap to enter a **Name prefix**, **First name**, **Middle name**, **Last name**, and **Name suffix**.

Note: The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

- **Phone**: Enter a telephone number, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from **Mobile**, **Work**, **Home**, **Main, Work Fax**, **Home Fax**, **Pager**, **Other**, **Custom** to create a custom label, or **Callback**.
- **Email**: Enter an email address, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from **Home**, **Work**, **Other**, or **Custom** to create a custom label.

- **Address**: Enter an address, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from **Home**, **Work**, **Other**, or **Custom** to create a custom label.
- **Events:** Tap to display an event label and field. Enter the event date, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from **Birthday**, **Anniversary**, **Other**, or **Custom** to create a custom event. Tap to add additional events.
- **Groups**: Tap this field to display the Select group screen. To assign the contact to one or more groups, tap the check box next to each group. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box. For more information about Groups, see *"Groups"* on page 72.

5. Tap to add additional field. Tap to remove an unused field.
6. Tap **Add another field** to add these additional fields: **Phonetic name**, **Organization**, **IM**, **Notes**, **Nickname, Website**, **Internet call**, and **Relationship**.
7. Tap **Back** (bottom-left) to remove the keyboard.
8. When you finish entering information, tap **Save**.

   – or –

   Tap **Cancel** ➔ **OK** to cancel and discard changes.

Tip: Display a contact's record and tap the **Email** field to send an email, tap the **Address** field to display the address on a map, or tap the **Website** field to link to the website.

Updating Contacts

To update an existing contact:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap an entry in the Contacts list (left screen area) to view its information.
3. Tap **Edit**.
4. Continue entering contact information. For more information, refer to *"Creating Contacts"* on page 66.
5. When you finish entering information, tap **Save**.

Deleting Contacts

To delete a contact:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap a contact in the Contacts list (left screen area) to view its information, and then select **Delete**. At the prompt, tap **OK**.

Managing Photo IDs

To remove or update a contact's Photo ID:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Edit**.
3. Select the Photo ID, then tap **Remove**, **Picture**, or **Take picture**.

Contacts Display Options

There are various ways to display your Contacts and general Contacts settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups**, **Favorites**, or **Contacts** tabs above the Contacts List area (upper-left), to view contacts various ways:
   - **Groups**: Displays the possible Groups, such as Not assigned, Co-workers, Family, Friends, and so on. The number of contacts in the group is displayed next to the group name. Tap a group name to show only contacts in that group. For more information, refer to *"Creating a New Group"* on page 72.
   - **Favorites**: Show only your favorite, or starred, contacts. For more information, refer to *"Favorites"* on page 74.
   - **Contacts**: Show all your contacts. Tap the **Find contacts** field and enter a keyword to list contacts that contain that keyword.
3. From the **Contacts** list, tap **Menu** to display all or some of these options:
   - **Delete contacts**. Tap the check mark the box next to each contact you want to delete. Tap **Delete** and then tap **OK**.
   - **Merge with Google**: Merges the current contact with your Google account contacts.
   - **Send email**: Sends an email to the selected contact.
   - **Send message**: Sends a text message to the selected contact.
   - **History**: Displays information about the selected contact.
   - **Join contact**: Join a contact to one or more other contacts. For more information, refer to *"Joining Contacts"* on page 71.

- **Mark as default**: If a contact has multiple email addresses, for example, tap the field that should be the default value.
- **Share namecard via**: Shares the selected namecard using Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or through Wi-Fi Direct.
- **Print namecard**: Check mark the fields you want to print and then tap **Print**. You can only print on a Samsung printer.
- **Contacts to display**: Select the contacts you want to display in this inbox (All contacts, Google, SIM, Device, or Customized list).
- **Import/Export**: Use the USB cable to import your contacts from, or export your contacts to, a storage device, such as a PC. For more information, refer to *"Importing and Exporting Contacts"* on page 72.
- **Accounts**: Displays the Accounts and sync screen so you can manage or synchronize this account.
- **Settings**: Configure contact settings:
  - **Only contacts with phones**: Tap to check the box to only display contacts that have phone numbers.
  - **List by**: List contacts by **First name** or **Last name**.
  - **Display contacts by**: Display contact names as **First name first** or **Last name first**.
  - **Contact sharing settings**: Sets parameters for sending contact information. Tap **Settings** to access these settings:

    - Send all namecards: Allows you to transmit all of your current Contact entries at a single time. If the recipient device does not support this feature, some or all Contact entries might not be received.

    - Send individual namecards: Allows you to transmit single contacts, one at a time. The recipient must accept each namecard as it is received. This method of transmission ensures all contacts are received.

4. From the **Groups** list, select a group and then tap **Menu** to display these Group-specific options:
   - **Search**: Search the group for a contact.
   - **Delete**: Tap one or more groups and select **Done**.
   - **Edit**: Change the Group name or tap **Add member** to add or delete group members.

Note: Some entries will not appear unless you have a group selected.

- **Remove member**: Remove a selected member from this group.

- **Send message**: To send a text message to one or more members of the group, tap the check mark the box next to each contact you want to send to, or tap **Select all**, and tap **Done**. Compose your message.
- **Send email**: To send an email to one or more members of the group, tap the check mark the box next to each contact you want to send to, or tap **Select all**, and tap **Done**. Select **Compose Email** or **Compose Gmail** as the method for sending the email.
- **Change order**: Changes the order of how the groups display.

Linked Contacts

Your device can synchronize with multiple accounts, including Google, Corporate Exchange, and other email providers. When you synchronize contacts from these accounts with your device, you may have multiple contacts for one person.

Linking, or joining, imported contact records allows you to see all the contact's numbers and addresses together in one contact entry. Linking also helps you keep your contacts updated, because any changes that your contacts make to their information in the respective accounts is automatically updated the next time you synchronize with the account.

Joining Contacts

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap a contact in the **Contacts** list to view its information.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Join contact**.
4. Select the contact you want to join.

   The joined contact's information is displayed with the original contact's information.
5. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to join other contacts.

Separating Contacts

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap a previously joined contact in the **Contacts** list to view its information.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Separate contact**.

   A list of Joined contacts displays.
4. Tap ➔ **OK** to separate a joined contact.

   The contact is removed from the list.

Sharing Contact Information

You can send a contact's information by way of Bluetooth to other Bluetooth devices or in an Email or Gmail as an attachment.

Note: Not all Bluetooth devices accept contacts and not all devices support transfers of multiple contacts. Check the target device's documentation.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Share namecard via**.

Tip: Set up a contact record for yourself to share your information with others.

3. At the prompt, choose a sending method. Options are:
   - **Bluetooth**: For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.
   - **Email**: For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 88.
   - **Gmail**: For more information, refer to *"Composing and Sending Gmail"* on page 86.
   - **Messaging**: For more information, refer to *"Creating and Sending Messages"* on page 76.

- **Wi-Fi Direct**: To send Contacts entries directly to an external device through a Wi-Fi connection

4. Follow the prompts to send the contact information.

Importing and Exporting Contacts

To back up and restore your contacts information, you can export your contacts list to a storage device, such as a PC, or import your contacts list (previously exported) from a storage device.

1. Use the USB cable to connect your device to the storage device.
2. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Import/Export**.
4. Tap **Import from USB storage**, **Export to USB storage**, **Import from SD card**, **Export to SD card, Import from SIM card**, **Export to SIM card**, or **Send namecard via**, then follow the prompts to complete the operation.
5. Tap **OK** to choose all current device/phone Contact entries.

Groups

Assign contacts to Groups to make searching for contacts faster or to quickly send messages to group members.

Creating a New Group

Create a new group when you add or edit a contact.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups** above the Contacts List.
3. Tap ➔ **Group name** field and use the keyboard to enter a new Group name.
4. Tap **Save** to save the new group name.

Tip: Contacts can belong to more than one group. Just tap the contact's **Groups** field and tap each group.

Once you create a new group, the Contacts List can be set to display only the contacts in that group. For more information, refer to *"Contacts Display Options"* on page 68.

Renaming a Group

To rename a group that you created:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups** and then select the group you want to rename.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Edit**.
4. Tap **Group name** field and use the keyboard to enter a new Group name.
5. Tap **Save** to save the new group name.

Deleting Groups

To delete a group that you created:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups** and then select any group you want to delete.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Delete**.
   The groups that can be deleted display.
4. Select either **Select all**, **Starred in Android**, or the name of each group to delete.
5. Tap **Delete** to delete the groups. Choose from **Group only** or **Group and group members**.

Adding Group Members

To add a contact to a group, just Edit a contact's Group field. For more information, refer to *"Updating Contacts"* on page 67.

To add multiple contacts to a group:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups** and then tap the group to which you want to add members.
3. Select **(Add group member)**
   The contacts that can be added display.
4. Tap **Select all** or the name of each contact to add.
5. Tap **Done** to add the contacts to the group.

Removing Group Members

To remove contacts from a group:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups** and then select the group from which you want to remove members.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Remove member**.
4. Tap **Select all** or the name of each contact to remove.
5. Tap **Done** to remove the contacts.

   Contacts are removed from the group and the group name is removed from each contact's **Group** field.

Favorites

Mark contact records with a gold star to identify them as favorites.

Adding Favorites

To add a contact to the Favorites list:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap a contact to display it.
3. Tap the **Star** next to the contact name so that it turns gold.

Tip: You do not have to edit the contact to change the Starred status.

Accessing Favorites

You can view your favorites two ways for fast viewing or messaging.

To view your favorites list:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Groups** above the Contacts List and then select **Starred in Android**.

   – or –

   Tap **Favorites** above the Contacts List.

   Only your starred contacts display.

Removing Favorites

To remove one or more contacts from your favorites list:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap **Favorites** above the Contacts List.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Remove from favorites**.
4. Tap **Select all** or the name of each contact to remove.
5. Tap **Done** to remove the contacts.

To remove one contact from your favorites list:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.
2. Tap a contact to display it.
3. Tap the **Star** next to the contact's name so that it turns gray to remove it from the **Favorites** list.

Section 6: Messaging

This section describes how to send and receive messages and other features associated with messaging.

Types of Messages

Your device supports these types of messages:

- **Text Messages**: Send and receive both SMS (text) and MMS (multimedia) text messages
- **Gmail**: Send and receive Gmail from your Google account.
- **Email**: Send and receive email from your email accounts, including Corporate Exchange mail.
- **Google Talk**: Chat with other Google Talk users.

Note: 3G/4G and Messaging features are supported, whereas Calling features are not supported.

Creating and Sending Messages

The Short Message Service (SMS) lets you send and receive text messages to and from other mobile devices or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's message service.

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) lets you send and receive multimedia messages (such as picture, video, and audio messages) to and from other mobile devices or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider's multimedia message service.

Important! When creating a message, adding an image, a sound file, or a video clip to a text message changes the message from a text message to a multimedia message.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging** ➔ **Compose new message**.

2. Tap the **Enter recipient** field to manually enter a recipient.

   – or –

   Tap to select from one of the following:

   - **Groups**: to select a recipient from the Group list.
   - **Favorites**: to select a recipient from the Favorites list.
   - **Contacts**: to select a recipient from your Contacts list (valid entries must have a wireless phone number or email address).
3. If adding a recipient from the above categories, tap the contact to place a checkmark then tap **Done**. The contact displays in the recipient field.

Note: Delete any unnecessary members by tapping their name/number in the recipient area and selecting **Delete**.

4. Add more recipients by tapping either the **Enter recipient** field or and selecting recipients.
5. Tap the **Enter message** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a message.
6. Review your message and tap **Send**.

If you have more than one recipient, the same text message is sent to all recipients in the Enter Recipients field.

Note: If you exit a message before you send it, it will be automatically saved as a draft.

Message Options

Options before composing a message

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. From within an existing open message, tap **Menu** to display additional messaging options:
   - **Insert smiley**: allows you to add insert smiley icons images (emoticons).
   - **Preview** (only in MMS messages): allows you to add preview the MMS message prior to delivery.
   - **Add text**: allows you to add text items from sources such as: Calendar, Location, Contacts, and Text templates.
   - **Add to Contacts**: adds the current recipient as a new Contacts entry.
   - **View contact**: reveals the current Contact's overview screen.

- **Add slide**: converts an SMS message into an MMS (Multimedia) message and allows you to attach an existing slideshow.
- **Remove slide** (only in MMS messages): allows you to remove a previously attached slideshow.
- **Add subject**: allows you to enter a subject.
- **Duration (5 sec)** (only in MMS messages): allows you to assign a duration for each slides to appear on-screen.
- **Layout(bottom)** (only in MMS messages): allows you to choose the message layout by selecting the text to appear at the top of bottom of the MMS.

3. From within the main Messaging screen, tap **Menu** to display these additional messaging options:
   - **Text templates**: provides quick access to your message text templates. For more information, refer to *"Text Templates"* on page 83.
   - **Delete threads**: allows you to erase the current message thread.
   - **Settings**: adjust the Messaging application settings. For more information, refer to *"Messaging Settings"* on page 82.

Adding attachments to a message

To add an attachment to your current message, tap **Attach** and select one of the following options:

- **Images**: allows you to tap an existing image from your Pictures list to add it to your message.
- **Take picture**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, take a photo with device's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Video**: allows you to choose an existing video from the Videos list, then add it to your message.
- **Record video**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, record a video clip using the device's camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
- **Audio**: allows you to choose an existing audio file from the Audio list, then add it to your message by tapping the circle to the right of the audio so that it turns green, then tapping **Done**.
- **Memo**: allows you to add a note from your Memo app. Select an available memo and tap **Done**.
- **Calendar**: allows you to add an event from your calendar.
- **Location**: allows you to attach a thumbnail of a map showing your location.

- **Contacts**: allows you to tap on an existing Address Book entry, then add it to your message by tapping **Done**.

Adding Additional Text

You can copy text such as names, phone numbers, and events from your Contacts, Calendar, or a Memo.

1. While composing a message, tap **Menu** ➔ **Add text**.
2. At the Add text screen, select one of the following:
   - **Memo**: allows you to add an existing memo to your message.
   - **Calendar**: allows you to add the name, date, and time of a calendar event to your message.
   - **Location**: allows you to add an address and the link to the location on Google Maps.
   - **Contacts**: allows you to add the name and phone number of any of your contacts to your message.
   - **Text templates**: allows you to add pre-defined phrases and sentences. For more information, refer to *"Text Templates"* on page 83.

The information is added to your message.

Viewing Newly Received Messages

When you receive a message, your device notifies you by displaying within the Notification area at the bottom right of your Home screen.

To read a message:

1. Tap to open the massaging application and select the message.

   – or –

   From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging** then select the new message to view its contents. The selected message displays on the screen.
2. Tap to play a multimedia message.
   - To pause playback of the multimedia message, tap .
3. In a single motion, touch and drag up or down the page to scroll through the message (if additional pages were added).

Message Threads

Sent and received text and picture messages are grouped into message threads. Threaded messages allow you to see all the messages exchanged (similar to a chat program) and displays a contact on the screen.

Message threads are listed in the order in which they were received, with the latest message displayed at the top.

To reply to a text message:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. While the message is open, tap the **Enter message** field and then type your reply message.
3. Compose your reply.
   Your texts are colored Blue and your caller's replies are Yellow.
4. Tap **Send** to deliver your reply.
   – or –
   Tap **Menu** and then select one of the available message options (page 77).

To access message thread options:

- From the main Messaging screen, touch and hold a listed message to display the following options:
  - **View contact**: displays the Contact's Overview page.
  - **Add to contact**: begins the process of adding the new number to your Contacts list.
  - **Delete thread**: deletes the currently selected message thread.

To access additional Bubble options:

- Touch and hold the message bubble within an active message conversation to display the following options:
  - **Delete message**: deletes the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Copy message text**: copies the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Lock/Unlock message**: locks or unlocks the currently selected message bubble from being accidentally deleted.
  - **Save attachment**: allows you to save the current media file.
  - **Forward**: allows you to forward the currently selected message bubble to an external recipient.
  - **Copy to SIM**: copies the currently selected message bubble as a single text message within the SIM card.

- **View message details**: displays details for the currently selected message bubble.

Deleting Messages

Deleting a single message thread

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. Touch and hold a message from the Messages list (left pane), then select **Delete thread**.
3. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

Deleting multiple message threads

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. Tap **Menu** and then tap **Delete threads**.
3. Tap each message thread you want to delete. A checkmark displays beside each selected message.
4. Tap **Delete**.
5. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to end the process.

Deleting a single message bubble

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
3. Touch and hold a message bubble, then select **Delete message**.
4. At the prompt, tap **OK** to delete or **Cancel** to exit.

Message Search

You can search through your messages by using the Message Search feature.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. Tap **Search**.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search.
4. All messages that contain the entered search string display.

Messaging Settings

To configure the settings for text messages, multimedia messages, Voice mails, and Push messages.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. Tap **Menu** and then tap **Settings**.

The following Messaging settings are available:

Display

- **Bubble style**: allows you to choose from several bubble styles for your messages. Bubbles are the rounded boxes that surround each message.
- **Background style**: allows you to choose from several background styles for your messages.

Storage settings

- **Delete old messages**: deletes old messages when the limit is reached, rather than overwriting them.
- **Text message limit**: allows you to set a limit on how many text messages are allowed in one conversation.
- **Multimedia message limit**: allows you to set a limit on how many multimedia messages are allowed in one conversation.

Text message (SMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Manage SIM card messages**: allows you to manage the messages stored on the SIM card.
- **Message center**: allows you to enter the number of your message center where your messages reside while the system is attempting to deliver them.
- **Input mode**: allows you to set the input mode for your text messages. Choose from: GSM Alphabet, Unicode, or Automatic.

Multimedia message (MMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Read reports**: when this option is activated, your device receives a request for a read reply along with your message to the recipient.
- **Auto-retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve messages.
- **Roaming auto-retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve while roaming.

- **Creation mode**: allows you to select the creation mode: Free, Restricted, or Warning.
  - **Restricted**: you can only create and submit messages with content belonging to the Core MM Content Domain.
  - **Warning**: the device will warn you via pop up messages that you are creating a multimedia message which does not fit the Core MM Content Domain.
  - **Free**: you may add any content to the message.
- **Alert when mode changes to MMS**: allows you to activate an audible notification that alerts you when a text message (SMS) changes to a multi-media message (MMS).

Push message settings

- **Push messages**: allows you to receive push messages from the network.
- **Service loading**: allows you to set the type of service loading notification. Choose from: Always, Prompt, or Never.

Notification settings

- **Notifications**: allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.
- **Select ringtone**: allows you to set the ringtone for your message notifications.

Text Templates

This screen displays your available text message reply templates. This is a readily accessible list of both default and user-defined text snippets that can be used to quickly reply to incoming messages.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. From the Messaging list, tap **Menu** ➔ **Text templates**.
3. Tap a message to immediately insert it into your current message conversation.

To create your own text template:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. From the Messaging list, tap **Menu** ➔ **Text templates**.
3. Tap **Create text template**.
4. Enter a new text string and tap **Save**.

Gmail

Send and receive email with Gmail, Google's web-based email.

Tip: To set up your Google account on your device, use **Accounts and sync** settings. For more information, refer to *"Accounts and Synchronization"* on page 222.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.

Setting Up Your Gmail Account

If you did not set up a Google account during the initial configuration, the first time you launch Gmail, your device prompts you to set up your Google account.

Note: You can use more than one Google account on your device. To add another account, tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **ADD ACCOUNT**.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.
   The Add a Google Account screen displays.
2. Tap **Existing** to sign in to an existing account.
   - At the **Sign in** screen, use the on-screen keyboard to enter your Google **Email** name and **Password**, then tap **Sign in**.

   – or –

   Tap **New** to create a new account.
   - At the **Your name** screen, enter your first and last name, and tap **Next**.
   - At the **Create email address** follow the prompts to create a new account.

   The Backup and restore screen displays.
3. Read the backup and restore information, tap the option to enable or disable it, and then tap **Next**.
4. The device communicates with the Google server to set up your account and synchronize your email. When complete, your Gmail displays in the Inbox.

Refreshing Your Gmail Account

Refresh your account to update your device from the Gmail servers.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.
2. Tap **Refresh** in the Application Bar.

Managing Your Gmail Account

Use menu options to manage your Gmail account.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.
2. Tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Manage labels**: Determine settings for each label.
   - **Settings**: Configure settings. For more information, refer to *"Gmail Account Settings"* on page 86.
   - **Help**: Learn about using Gmail.
   - **Send feedback**: Fill out a Google feedback form.

Managing Your Gmail Conversations

In addition to managing your Gmail account, there are options for changing the status of one or more Gmail conversations in an account.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.
2. Tap the gray box to the left of one or more conversations and then choose one of the following options:
   - **Archive** : Archive the conversations. Archived conversations are assigned to the All Mail folder.
   - **Delete** : Delete the conversations. Deleted conversations are moved to the Trash folder.
   - **Change labels** : Relocate the conversations to the **Inbox**, **Personal**, **Receipts**, **Travel**, or **Work** folder and then tap **OK**.
   - **Mark as Read** / **Mark as Unread** : Mark the conversations as read or unread. Once a conversation is marked as read, it has a gray background. Tap **DONE** to remove the check marks.

Tip: To move a conversation to another folder, touch and drag it to the folder tab.

3. Tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Add star** / **Remove star**: Mark (or unmark) conversations with a yellow star. Starred conversations are listed in the Starred folder. Tap **Done** to remove check marks.
   - **Mark important** / **Mark not important**: Change the importance indicator . Yellow indicates important.
   - **Mute**: New messages added to muted conversations bypass your inbox so that the conversation stays archived in the All Mail folder.
   - **Report spam**: Report the conversations as spam, which are emails that violate the Gmail Program Policies and/or Terms of Use.

Composing and Sending Gmail

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.
2. Tap **Compose**.
3. Tap the **To** field to enter recipients. As you enter names or email addresses, matching contacts display. Select a contact to add it to the field.
4. Tap the **Subject** field to enter a subject.
5. Tap **Compose email** to enter the text of your email.
6. While composing a message, the following options are displayed:
   - **+ CC/BCC**: Create Cc (copy) and Bcc (blind copy) fields in the message. After creating the fields, tap to enter recipients.
   - **Attach**: Launch Gallery to select a photo to add to the message.
7. Tap **Menu** for the following options:
   - **Save draft**: Stores the current message as a draft.
   - **Discard**: Allows you to discard the current message.
   - **Settings**: Configure settings. For more information, refer to *"Gmail Account Settings"* on page 86.
   - **Help**: Learn about using Gmail.
   - **Send feedback**: Fill out a Google feedback form.
8. Tap **SEND** to send this message.

   – or –

   Tap **SAVE DRAFT** to save a draft of this message.

Gmail Account Settings

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gmail**.
2. From the main Gmail screen, tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings** for settings:

   General settings

   - **Confirm before deleting**: Have your device prompt you to confirm Delete actions.
   - **Confirm before archiving**: Have your device prompt you to confirm archiving actions.

- **Confirm before sending**: Have your device prompt you to confirm Send actions.
- **Auto-advance**: Choose a screen to show after you delete or archive a conversation.
- **Message text size**: Set the size of text in message displays.
- **Clear search history**: Remove previous searches you performed.
- **Hide pictures in messages**: Pictures found within messages are not automatically shown. You are prompted to view them.

(Gmail account settings)

Each account has independent settings:

- **Priority Inbox**: This setting is only available if you have configured Gmail on the web to show Priority Inbox. If available, you can set Priority Inbox as the conversation list to open when you have new mail, rather than Inbox.
- **Email notifications**: When enabled, notifications for new email appear in the Status Bar.
- **Ringtone & vibrate**: If Email notifications is enabled, tap this field to set the following options:
  - **Sync messages**: Sync options are: None, Last 30 days, or All.
  - **Email notifications**: When enabled, notifications for new email appear in the Status Bar.
  - **Ringtone**: Choose a ringtone for new email notifications or use the default ringtone and then tap **OK**.
  - **Notify once**: When enabled, a notification appears in the Status Bar for new email, not for every new message.
- **Signature**: Create a text signature to add to outgoing messages.
- **Gmail sync is ON/OFF**: Indicates whether you have Gmail synchronization turned on for this account in the **Accounts and sync** settings. Tap to open those settings.
- **Days of mail to sync**: Set the number days to sync email for this Gmail account.
- **Manage labels**: Choose which labels are synchronized.
- **Download attachments**: Enable or disable auto-download of files attached to recent messages when connected through Wi-Fi.

About Gmail

- Displays information about the Gmail (Version, copyright information, Send feedback, Report a problem, Open source licenses, Privacy Policy).

Email

Use Email to view and manage all your email accounts in one application.

Email (or Internet Email) enables you to review and create email using several email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email. Your device's Email application lets you access and manage multiple email accounts simultaneously in one convenient location.

There are currently three main types of email accounts on your device: Gmail, Internet-based email (Gmail, Yahoo, etc..), and Microsoft Exchange (Corporate email or Outlook®).

To send and receive email messages through an ISP (Internet Service Provider) account, or if you wish to use your device to access your corporate email through a VPN (Virtual Private Network), you will first need to set up an IMAP or POP account.

- **IMAP** (Internet Message Access Protocol) - This protocol is frequently used in large networks and commercial settings. IMAP4 is the current standard.
- **POP3** (Post Office Protocol) - This protocol is supported by most ISPs (Internet service providers) and common among consumer applications. POP3 is the current standard.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** - This protocol is frequently used with a large corporate email server system and provides access to email, contact, and calendar synchronization.

Configuring Email Accounts

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Email**.
2. At the **Set up email** screen, enter an **Email address** and **Password**, then tap **Next**.
3. Your account's incoming server settings are different depending on the kind of email service for the account. If you are asked **What type of account?**, tap the type of account: **POP3 account**, **IMAP account**, or **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**.

   The Server settings screen displays. Enter the required settings and tap **Next**. For more information, refer to *"Incoming Server Settings"* on page 96.

Important! If your account settings could not obtained automatically, tap **Edit details,** update the **Domain** and **Exchange server** information, an tap **Next**.

4. If prompted, read the **Activation** popup information and tap **OK**.
5. If prompted, read the **Remote security administration** popup information and tap **OK**.
6. Review the Account options screen. Available options vary, depending on the provider:
   - **Peak schedule**: Set how often to check for new email sent to this account during peak times. Options are: Push (Automatic), Manual, every 5 or 15 minutes, or every 1, 4, or 12 hours.
   - **Off-peak schedule**: Set how often to check for new email sent to this account during off-peak times. Options are: Push (Automatic), Manual, every 5 or 15 minutes, or every 1, 4, or 12 hours.
   - **Period to sync Email**: For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, set whether to store All, 1 or 3 days, 1 or 2 weeks, or 1 month of email on the tablet.
   - **Email check frequency**: Set how often to check for new email. Options are: Never, Every 5, 10, 15, or 30 minutes, Every hour, Every 4 hours, or Once a day.
   - **Emails retrieval size**: Set the maximum email retrieval size. Options are: Headers only, 0.5, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, or100 KB, or All.
   - **Period to sync Calendar**: Set how much of the calendar for this account to sync with your tablet. Options are: 2 weeks, 1, 3, or 6 months, or All calendar.
   - **Send email from this account by default**: When enabled, email from your device is automatically sent from this account.
   - **Notify me when email arrives**: When enabled, you receive notifications when you receive new email sent to this account.
   - **Sync Email**: When enabled, email from your account is synchronized with your device's email.
   - **Sync Contacts**: When enabled, contacts from your account are synchronized with your device's Contacts.
   - **Sync Calendar**: When enabled, events from your account are synchronized with your device's Calendar.
   - **Sync Task**: When enabled, tasks from your account are synchronized with your device's Calendar.

- **Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi**: Enable or disable auto-download of files attached to recent messages when connected through Wi-Fi.

7. Tap **Next** to go to the next screen or tap **Previous** to go to the Apps screen.

Note: For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, the Activate device administrator? screen may appear. Read the information and tap **Activate** to continue.

8. Enter an account name for the email account just added, which is displayed on the email screen, and enter Your name, if required.
9. Tap **Done**.

   The device communicates with the appropriate server to set up your account and synchronize your email. When complete, your email appears in the Inbox for the account.

Note: To configure email account settings at any time, use **Menu** ➔ **Settings**. Tap the account to display Account settings.

Adding Additional Email Accounts

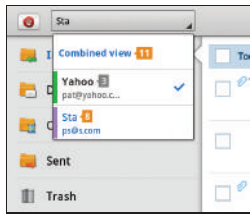
To add additional email accounts:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Email**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Add account**.
3. Enter the **Email address**, **Password**, and so on.

Managing Your Email Accounts

You can view email you receive for all accounts in the **Combined view** screen or you can view email accounts individually.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Email**.
2. Tap the drop-down menu at the top left of the screen to select:
   - **Combined view**: View all email in a combined inbox.
   - <**Account Name**>: View email for the account.



Managing Your Email Conversations

In addition to managing your Email account, there are options for changing the status of one or more Email conversations in an account.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Email**.

Note: Some of these options are dependant on the email account type and might not appear.

2. Tap the box to the left of one or more conversations and then choose one of the following options:
   - **Star** : mark the conversations with a gold star and list them in the Starred folder. Tap to make the changes.

     – or –

     Flag : Tap **Clear** to clear all flags and check marks, tap **Complete** to mark all conversations with a blue check mark, or tap **Set** to set all flags. Set flags are gold.
   - **Mark as Read** / **Mark as Unread** : Mark the conversations as read or unread. Once a conversation is marked as read, it has a gray background.
   - **Move to** **:** Relocate the conversations to another folder in the current email account or in a folder within another email account.
   - **Delete** : Delete the conversations.

   – or –

   From the main email scree, tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Sort by**: Choose a method for listing your email conversations.
   - **View mode**: Choose how to view your email conversations. Choices are: Standard view and Conversations view.
   - **Create folder**: Create a new main folder or tap an existing folder to create a sub-folder.

Note: The create folder option is not available for all email accounts.

   - **Delete all**: Delete all items for this email account.
   - **New meeting invitation**: Creates a new meeting invitation as a new Calendar event.
   - **Documents**: Opens a remotely stored document by accessing a Windows SharePoint or Windows file share address.

- **Settings**: Display the settings for this email account. For more information, refer to *"Account Settings"* on page 93.

Composing and Sending Email

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Email**.
2. Tap an account, if you have more than one account set up, then tap **Compose**.
3. Enter the recipient's email address in the **To** field.
   - If you are sending the email message to several recipients, separate the email addresses with a comma. You can add as many message recipients as you want.
   - Tap to add a contact to the field.
   - Tap **+Cc/Bcc** to add additional carbon copy recipients.
     - Use the **Cc** field to carbon copy additional recipients.
     - Use the **Bcc** field to blind copy additional recipients.
   - Tap **+Me** to add yourself as a recipient.
4. Tap the **Subject** field to enter a subject.
5. Tap the body of the email to enter the text of your email.
6. While composing a message, the following options may be displayed:

   Priority: Set the email priority. Options are: High, Normal, or Low.

   Tracking options: Tap **Read receipt** or **Delivery receipt** and then tap **OK** to set the tracking options for this email.

   Security options: Set the email security options. Options are: Encrypt and Sign.

   Attach: Choose an attachment to add to the message from the listed apps, such as My Files, Images, Video, Audio, and so on.

   Undo: Erase the previous input.

   Redo: Restore the previously erased input.

   Insert: Choose an item to insert into the message from the listed apps, such as Images, Memo, Contacts, and so on.

Insert quick response: Insert text that you frequently use in emails. For more information, refer to *"Account Settings"* on page 93.

Font size: Choose a text font size of 9, 10,12, 14, 16, 20, 24, 28, or 36 points.

Bold: Bold the following text. Tap again to turn off bold.

Italics: This action italicizes the subsequent entered text.

Font color: Set the color of the text font. The bar changes to the selected color.

Background color: Set the color of the background of the email.

7. Tap **Save** to save the email to the Drafts folder, **Send** to send the email, or **Delete** to delete the email.

Account Settings

Account settings lets you configure handling of email on your device.

Note: Available settings may depend on the email account and include setting how much email to synchronize, creating signatures for email you send, and other handling options.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Email**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings**, then select **General preferences**. The following options display:
   - **Auto-advance**: Set the screen to show after deleting a message. Choices are: Newer message, Older message, or Message list.
   - **Message preview line**: Choose a message preview line amount. Options are: None or 1, 2, or 3 lines.
   - **Email title**: Set whether the Subject or Sender of the email is shown as the header.
   - **Confirm deletions**: Tap the box to enable or disable this option. A check mark indicates that deletions must be confirmed.
   - **Quick responses**: Edit text that you frequently use in emails.

Note: Some of these settings vary depending on the email account type used.

Tap an email account to display the following settings:

Common settings

- **Account name**: Enter a name to identify this account.
- **Your name**: Enter a name to be used on emails.
- **Add signature**: Touch and move the slider the box to enable or disable this option.
  A check mark indicates that the following signature is added to emails.
- **Signature**: Move the slider to enable or disable this option. Once enabled, tap the field and enter a signature to add to email from this account.
- **Default account**: When enabled, email from your device is automatically sent from this account.
- **Always Cc/Bcc myself**: Lets you manage whether your email address is included in the Cc or Bcc lines.
- **Forward with files**: Tap the check box to include any file attachments when you forward an email.
- **Recent messages**: Limit the number of recent messages that are displayed on your device. Options are: 25, 50, 75, 100, 200, or Total.
- **Show images**: Display images in an email.

Data usage

- **Sync Email**: Tap the box to enable or disable this option. A check mark indicates email sync is enabled.
- **Email check frequency**: Set how often to check for new email sent to this account during. Options are: Never, every 5, 10, 15, or 30 minutes, every hour, every 4 hours, or once a day.
- **Auto download attachments**: Enable or disable auto-download of files attached to recent messages when connected through Wi-Fi.
- **Size to retrieve emails**: Set the maximum email retrieval size, which ranges from 2 KB to 100 KB.
- **Auto resend times**: Set the number of times the outgoing is automatically sent if there are any issues detected. Options are: No limit or 1, 3, 5, or 10 times.

Exchange ActiveSync settings

- **Period to sync Email**: Set whether to store All, 1 or 3 days, 1 or 2 weeks, or 1 month of email on the tablet.
- **Empty server trash**: If available, indicates whether to delete the contents in the server trash.
- **Sync schedule**: Set up your peak and off-peak schedule controls, which determines when your tablet checks the email service for new email.
- **Out of office settings**: Lets you set how email is handled for a defined period of time, while you are unable to check your email.
- **Size to retrieve emails**: Set the maximum email retrieval size, which ranges from 0.5 KB to 100 KB or allow All email to be retrieved.
- **Period to sync Calendar**: When enabled, events from your account are synchronized with your device's Calendar.
- **Security options**: Set various security options for the account.
- **In case of sync conflict**: Set whether to update the server or your tablet if there is a conflict of information between them.
- **Auto resend times**: Set the number of auto send times. Options are: No limit or 1, 3, 5, or 10 times.

Notification settings

- **Email notifications**: When enabled, the New Email icon appears in the Status Bar when a new email arrives.
- **Select ringtone**: Choose a ringtone for email notifications for this account.

Server settings

- **Exchange server settings**: Configure incoming server settings.

  – or –

  Incoming settings: Configure incoming server settings. For more information, refer to *"Incoming Server Settings"* on page 96.
- **Outgoing settings**: Configure outgoing server settings. For more information, refer to *"Outgoing Server Settings"* on page 96.
- **Sync Email**: When enabled, email from your account is synchronized with your device's email.
- **Sync Contacts**: When enabled, contacts from your account are synchronized with your device's Contacts.
- **Sync Calendar**: When enabled, events from your account are synchronized with your device's Calendar.

- **Sync Task**: When enabled, tasks from your account are synchronized with your device's tasks.

Incoming Server Settings

Your account's exchange or incoming server settings are different, depending on the kind of email service for the account: POP3, IMAP, or Exchange ActiveSync.

- **Domain\ user name**: If your Exchange ActiveSync server requires that you specify a domain, enter it before the backslash. Otherwise, just enter your username (the part before @emailprovider.com in your email address) after the backslash. The backslash is optional when only entering your username. The Email app enters the correct syntax for domains and usernames when communicating with the server.
- **Password**: The password for your email account, which should be filled in.
- **Exchange server / IMAP server**: The fully resolved domain name of your email service provider's server, for example, mail.emailprovider.com.
- **Use secure connection (SSL) / Security type**: Check this option if your server requires you to connect to the server securely, or if you prefer to connect securely.
- **Use client certificate**: Use a client certificate for messaging security.
- **Port**: Set the Security type first to enter the typical server port number in this field automatically. Or enter a different port number if your email service provider requires it.
- **IMAP path prefix**: Enter an IMAP path prefix, if required.

Outgoing Server Settings

If you use an IMAP or POP3 account for receiving email, you typically use an SMTP server to send email from that account. Exchange ActiveSync accounts do not have separate outgoing server settings.

- **SMTP server**: The fully resolved domain name of your email service provider's SMTP server, for example, smtp.emprovider.com.
- **Security type**: Select the security type required by your email service provider. Select the **SLL (Accept all certificates)** option for your security type to accept a server certificate from your SMTP server that is self-signed, out of date, or in some other way not accepted by the Email application.
- **Port**: Set the Security type first to enter the typical server port number in this field automatically. Or enter a different port number if your email service provider requires it.

- **Require sign-in**: Check this option to enter a username and password for your SMTP server, if your email service provider requires that you enter them to send email.
- **User name**: Your username on the SMTP server (this may not be the same as your username on the POP3 or IMAP server for incoming mail). Visible only if Require sign-in is checked.
- **Password**: Your password on the SMTP server (this may not be the same as your username on the POP3 or IMAP server for incoming mail). Visible only if Require sign-in is checked.

Google Talk

Talk is Google's instant messaging and audio and video chat service. You can use it to communicate, in real time, with other people who also use Google Talk on another Android tablet or phone or on a computer.

Tip: Talk requires that you have a Google account. To set up your Google account on your device use **Accounts and sync** settings. For more information, refer to *"Accounts and Synchronization"* on page 222.

Open Talk and Sign In

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Talk**.
   If you are not signed in to a Google account, the Add a Google Account screen displays.
2. Tap **Existing**, if you already have a Google account, or **New** to create a Google account.
   For more information, refer to *"Setting Up Your Gmail Account"* on page 84.

Note: If you have already set up your Google account, you are automatically logged in. Just tap the account.

Once sign in is complete, the Talk main screen displays.

Invite a Friend to Chat

You can invite anyone with a Google Account to become your friend in Google Talk, so you can chat with each other and view each other's online status.

1. Tap your on-screen account name to log in.
2. While viewing your Friends list, tap **Add friend**.
3. Enter your friend's address and tap **DONE**.

   Your friend's address in Talk is a Gmail or other email address that is configured to connect to Google Talk.

   If your friend accepts your invitation, they are added to your Friends list in Talk and you can share each others status in Talk and other applications.

View and Accept an Invitation to Become a Friend

When a contact invites you to become a friend in Google Talk, you receive a notification in the System Bar and the invitation displays in your Friends list.

- Tap the invitation and select **Accept**, if you want to accept the invitation and chat, **Decline**, if you do not want to chat with and share your Google Talk status with the sender right now, or **Block**, if you do not want to receive any more invitations from that person.

  If you tap **Accept**, the friend is added to your Friends list in Talk and you can share your status in Talk and other applications.

Talk Options While Chatting

There are several options that are available while viewing your Friends list and some that are only available while you are chatting.

1. Tap to search your Talk messages or the current message for a word. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a search term.
2. Tap to invite another friend to chat, to invite a friend to video chat, or to invite a friend to voice chat.
3. Select a Friend's entry to display the Chat entries for that Friend.

4. Tap **Menu** to display the following options, which are available while viewing your Friends list and some that are only available while you are chatting.
   - **Display options**: To set the way your friends list is sorted, tap **Availability**, **Name**, or **Recency**.
   - **End all chats**: End all chats in which you are engaged.
   - **Sign out**: Sign out of Google Talk and display the Talk main screen.
   - **End chat**: End this chat session.
   - **Go off the record/Stop chatting off the record**: Set whether you want to stop saving your chat to the chat history.
   - **Friend info**: Display information about the friend with which you are chatting. The following options are also displayed:
     - **BLOCK**: Keeps this person from sending you messages and removes the person from your Friends list.
     - **REMOVE**: Remove the friend as if you never accepted their invitation. However, the friend is not blocked.

Note: If you tap the **REMOVE** option, tap **Add friend** ➔ **Send chat invitation to,** to make the Friend visible again.

   - **Add to chat**: Choose another friend to invite to this conversation.
   - **Clear chat history**: Remove the history of this chat from your device.
   - **Settings**: Offers various settings for Google talk. For more information, refer to *"Google Talk Settings"* on page 99.
   - **Help**: Displays additional help information.
   - **Send feedback**: Fill out a Google feedback form.

Google Talk Settings

Use Google Talk Settings to configure your Talk account. If you have more than one account, each maintains its own Talk settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Talk**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings**, then select an account for options:

   GENERAL

   - **Mobile indicator**: Check and your friends see an outline of an android next to your name in their Friends list when you are signed into Google Talk on a tablet or phone.

- **Away when screen off**: Check to change your Talk status to Away when your screen turns off. When unchecked, your status is not changed.
- **Invitation notifications**: Show notification when a friend invitation arrives.

CHAT NOTIFICATIONS

- **IM notifications**: Set whether to open a dialog, display a notification in the System Bar, or neither, when you receive a text chat.
- **Notification ringtone**: Set a ringtone to sound, or silent, when you receive a text chat.

VOICE & VIDEO CHAT

- **Video chat notifications**: Set whether to open a dialog or display a notification in the System Bar when you are invited to a video chat.
- **Video chat ringtone**: Set a ringtone to sound, or silent, when you receive an invitation to a video chat.
- **Default video effect**: Sets the image stabilization functionality. Choose from: None, Image stabilization: Low, Image stabalization: Medium, or Face tracking On.

ACCOUNT

- **Blocked friends**: Displays a list of friends you have blocked. Tap a blocked friend and then tap **OK** to unblock the friend.
- **Clear search history**: Erases your search history. No previous searches are shown until you search for new words.
- **Manage account**: Opens the Accounts and sync settings. For more information, refer to *"Accounts and Synchronization"* on page 222.

ABOUT

- **Terms & privacy**: Displays the Google Talk terms of use and privacy policies.

Messenger

With Google Messenger, you can bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation, putting everyone on the same page. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your device.

To get started, tap the Messenger icon on the home screen of the Google+ app or use the Messenger icon on your Applications screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Messenger**.

   The Messenger screen displays.

2. Tap **Learn more** in the center of the screen and then tap a topic to learn more about using Google Messenger.

Section 7: Multimedia

This section explains how to use the multimedia features of your device, including the Camera/Camcorder, Music Player, and how to manage your photos, images and sounds.

You can take photographs and shoot video by using the built-in camera functionality. Your camera produces photos in JPEG format.

Important! Do not take photos of people without their permission.

Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.

Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

Camera

Use your device's built-in camera and camcorder to take photos and record videos.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Camera**. The Camera screen displays.

Taking Photos

Taking pictures with your device's built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Camera**.
2. Using the display as a viewfinder, compose your photo by aiming the lens at the subject. To configure settings, see *"Camera Settings"* on page 105.
3. To take the photo, tap (**Camera** key) until the shutter sounds. (The picture is automatically stored within your designated storage location.
4. Tap **Back** to leave the Camera and display the previous screen.

Important! Do not take photos of people without their permission.

Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.

Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

Camera Options

Before you start taking photos, use the camera options to configure the camera for best results. Camera options are represented by icons on the left side of the screen. While in Camera mode, tap the following icons to set camera options:

Self shot: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and take a photo of yourself.

Shooting mode: Choose an automatic shooting mode, from:

- **Single shot**: Take a single photo.
- **Smile shot**: Tap the Camera button to automatically focus on the subject's face and take the photo.
- **Panorama**: Tap the Camera button to take a photo, then use the on-screen guideline to move the viewfinder and take the next 7 shots automatically.

Timer: Set a timer for how long to wait before taking a photo. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the photo. Options include: No effect, Negative, Black and white, or Sepia.

Exposure value: Use the slider to set the exposure value from -2.0 to +2.0.

Settings:

- **Edit shortcuts**: Allows you to replace the position of the main camera shortcuts with other features or functions.
- **Self-portrait**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and take a photo of yourself.
- **Shooting mode**: Set the shooting mode.
- **Scene mode**: Choose an automatic scene mode from None, Landscape, Night, Sports, Party/Indoor, Beach/Snow, Sunset, Dawn, Fall Color, Firework, Candlelight, or Backlight.
- **Exposure value**: Set the brightness of the photo.

Settings (Continued):

- **Timer**: Set a timer for how long to wait before taking a photo. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.
- **Effects**: Apply an effect to photos. Options are: No effect, Negative, Black and white, or Sepia.
- **Resolution**: Set a size for the image. Options are: 3.2M (2048x1536), W2.4M (2048x1152), 2M (1600x1200), W1.3M (1536x864), 1.3M (1280x960), W0.9M (1280x720), or 0.3M (640x480).
- **White balance**: Set the light source. Options are: Auto, Daylight, Incandescent, Fluorescent, or Cloudy.
- **Metering**: Set how the camera measures or meters the light source: Center-weighted, Spot, or Matrix.
- **Guidelines**: Activates/deactivates on-screen guidelines so you can frame your picture.

Settings (Continued):

- **GPS tag**: Enable or disable tagging of photos with your GPS location. displays on the screen when this option is active.

Caution! Be aware that your location may be present on a photo when posting your photos on the internet.

- **Shutter sound**: Activates/deactivates the sound associated with the shutter activation.
- **Storage**: Sets the default storage location as either Device or Memory card.
- **Reset**: Sets all the camera settings back their factory default values.

Camera / Camcorder Mode: allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera, or down for Camcorder.

Camera button: takes a photo when tapped in Camera mode.

Image viewer: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected picture. The last picture you took, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.

Camera Settings

Before you start taking photos, use the camera settings to configure the camera for best results. Camera settings are represented by icons on the left side of the screen.

Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts

The first five icons are actually shortcuts to camera settings. These five shortcuts can be customized to fit your preference.

Self-portrait, **Shooting mode**, **Timer**, **Effects,** and **Exposure value** are default settings shortcuts.

To customize these shortcuts:

1. Tap **Settings** ➔ **Edit shortcuts**.
   – or –
   Touch and hold any of the shortcut icons to edit them.
2. Touch and hold a setting, then drag and drop it on one of the five settings shortcuts to the left. The replaced setting shortcut displays in the edit list.

Viewing Photos with the Image Viewer

After taking a photo, use the Image Viewer to view, share, delete, or edit photos.

1. Tap the **Image Viewer** to view the photo.
2. Tap the screen to show or hide Image Viewer options.
3. With the image active, tap the screen with two fingers or double-tap on the screen to zoom all the way in or out. For more information, refer to *"Pinch"* on page 31.
4. Sweep across the screen to display the next or previous photo. The current photo is outlined in the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen. Tap a thumbnail to view the photo it represents.
5. Tap **Share via** to use Group Cast, Picasa, Photo editor, Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email to share the photo. For more information, refer to *"AllShare Play"* on page 164.
6. To delete the photo being displayed, tap **Delete** ➔ **OK** to delete the photo or **Cancel** to exit.
7. Tap **Slideshow** to display a slide show of the available pictures and videos.
8. Tap **Menu** to select **Set picture as** to assign the photo as a Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.
   For more information, refer to *"Viewing Photos and Videos"* on page 117. Additional functions include:
   - **Face tag**: Activate/deactivate face tag technology for people in your photo.
   - **Copy to clipboard**: Copies the current image to your device's clipboard.
   - **Rotate left**: Allows you to rotate the picture counterclockwise 90 degrees.
   - **Rotate right**: Allows you to rotate the picture clockwise 90 degrees.

- **Crop**: Allows you to crop the image. Tap and drag the crop box or the sides or corners of the crop box to create the crop area, then tap **Ok**. Tap **X** to stop without cropping the picture.
- **Edit**: Launches the Photo Editor with the current image selected.
- **Show on map**: This option displays if a Location exists for the photo. A Location is added to the photo if **GPS tag** is set **On** in the Camera settings. Tap this option to open the Map app and display the Location where the photo was taken. For more information, refer to *"Camera Settings"* on page 105.
- **Set as**: allows you to assign the current image as a Contact photo, Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and lock screens.
- **Buddy photo share**: allows you to share the current image with detected person in the photo. The subject tag can be added or deleted.
- **Print**: Print the current photo to a compatible Samsung printer.
- **Rename**: Changes the filename associated to the current image.
- **Details**: Displays the file information such as Title, Time, etc...

Note: Photos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as jpg files. For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 182.

9. Tap **Back** to return to the Camera to take more photos.

Assigning an Image as a Contact Icon

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, tap **Menu** ➔ **Set as** ➔ **Contact photo**.
4. Tap a contact to make a selection.
5. Crop the image and tap **Done**.

Assigning an Image as a Wallpaper

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, tap **Menu** ➔ **Set as**.

4. Select one of the three options:
   - **Home and lock screens wallpaper** assigns the current image as both the home screen and lock screen backgrounds. This image is spread across all available screens.
   - **Home screen wallpaper** assigns the current image to the home screen background. This image is spread across all available screens.
   - **Lock screen wallpaper** assigns the selected image to the background for the lock screen.
5. Touch and drag the crop box anywhere on the picture. Touch and drag the sides of the crop box to zoom in or out to create a cropped area.
6. Tap **Done** to assign the wallpaper image.

   – or –

   Tap **Cancel** to stop without updating the wallpaper image.

Camcorder

Use your device's built-in Camcorder to record high-definition video.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Camera**.
2. Slide the **Mode** button to the **Camcorder** setting. The Camcorder screen displays.

Recording Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Camera**.
2. Slide the **Mode** button to the **Camcorder** setting.
3. Using the display as a viewfinder, compose your shot by aiming the lens at the subject. For more information, refer to *"Camcorder Settings"* on page 109.
4. To start recording, tap **Record**.
   During recording, the **Record** button flashes.
5. Tap **Stop recording** to stop recording.
6. Tap **Back** to leave the Camcorder and display the previous screen.

Important! Do not take videos of people without their permission.
Do not take videos in places where cameras are not allowed.
Do not take videos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

Camcorder Settings

Before you start taking videos, use the camcorder settings to configure the camcorder for best results. Camcorder settings are represented by icons on the left side of the screen.

Editing Camcorder Settings Shortcuts

As with the camera, the first five icons are actually shortcuts to camcorder settings and recording lengths (Normal, Limit for MMS, and Limit for email). These five shortcuts can be customized to fit your preference.

Self-recording, **Recording mode**, **Timer**, **Effects,** and **Exposure value** are default shortcuts.

To customize these shortcuts, see *"Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts"* on page 105.

Camcorder Options

Before you start recording videos, use the camcorder options to configure the camcorder for best results. Camcorder options are represented by icons on the left side of the screen. While in Camcorder mode, tap the following icons to set camcorder options:

Self shot: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and record a video of yourself.

Recording mode: allows you to set the recording mode to: Normal, which is limited only by available space on the destination location, Limit for MMS, which is limited by MMS size restrictions, and Limit for email which restricts the file size so ti can easily be attached to a new outgoing email.

Timer: Set a timer for how long to wait before recording a video. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

Effects: allows you to change the color tone or apply special effects to the video. Options include: No effect, Negative, Black and white, or Sepia.

Exposure value: Set the brightness of the video.

Settings

- For more information, refer to *"Configuring Camcorder Settings"* on page 111.

Camera / Camcorder Mode: allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera, or down for Camcorder.

Camcorder button: shoots or stops video recording when tapped in Camcorder mode.

Image viewer: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected video. The last video you shot, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.

Configuring Camcorder Settings

To configure Camcorder settings:

- While in Camcorder mode, tap a settings shortcut or tap **Settings** to configure the following Camcorder settings:
  - **Edit shortcuts**: Customize your settings shortcuts. For more information, refer to *"Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts"* on page 105.
  - **Self-recording**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and record a video of yourself.
  - **Recording mode**: Set a recording mode. Options are: Normal, Limit for MMS, and Limit for email, which limits the size of the video to 50 megabytes.
  - **Exposure value**: Use the slider to set the exposure value from -2.0 to +2.0.
  - **Timer**: Set a timer for how long to wait before recording a video. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.
  - **Effects**: Apply an effect to videos. Options are: No effect, Negative, Black and white, or Sepia.
  - **Resolution**: Set a size for the video. Options are: 1280x720, 720x480, 640x480, or 320x240.
  - **White balance**: Set the light source. Options are: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.

Note: What you see on screen will not correspond to the luminance of the actual video taken.

  - **Guidelines**: Enable or disable an on-screen grid to aid in video composition.
  - **Storage**: Sets the default video storage location. Choose from Device or Memory card.
  - **Reset**: Set all Camera settings to the defaults.

Viewing Videos with the Image Viewer

After recording a video, use the Image Viewer to play, share, or delete your video.

1. Tap the **Image Viewer** to view the video.
2. Tap the screen to show or hide Image Viewer options.
3. Sweep across the screen to display the next or previous video. The current video is outlined in the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen. Tap a thumbnail to view the video it represents.

4. Tap **Share via** to use Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, gmail, or Email to share the video.
5. To delete the video being displayed, tap **Delete** ➔ **OK** to delete the video or **Cancel** to exit.
6. Tap **Slideshow** to display a slide show of the available pictures and videos.

Note: Videos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as mp4 files. For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 182.

7. As the videos plays, tap **Menu** to select additional options such as:
   - **Share via**: Shares that current video via Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi DIrect, Messaging, YouTube, or Gmail.
   - **Chapter preview**: Displays an on-screen icon preview of the various available chapters of the video (broken down in increments based on length).
   - **Trim**: Allows you to edit the length and content of the current video.
   - **Via Bluetooth**: Shares the current via directly via a current Bluetooth connection to an external device.
   - **Video Maker**: Launches the Video Maker application.
   - **Details**: displays file information for the current video.
   - **Settings**: Provides access to the video player settings. Choose from: Play speed or Subtitles.
8. To play a video, tap **Play**.
   Tap **Pause** to pause the video and tap **Resume** to resume playing the video.
9. Tap **SoundAlive** to set the sound quality to Normal, Voice, Movie, or Virtual 7.1 ch.
10. Touch and drag the white dot on the progress bar to fast forward or rewind the video. Tap the left end of the progress bar to restart the video. Tap the right end of the progress bar to end the video playback.
    – or –
    Tap **Rewind** to restart the video or **Fast Forward** to end the video.
11. Tap **Back** to return to the Camcorder.

Video Player

Your device's large LCD screen provides playback of videos. Use Video to view and manage videos stored on your tablet. This device is able to playback DivX videos.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Video Player**.
2. Tap the **Thumbnails**, **List**, or **Folders** tab.
3. Tap **Search** and use the keyboard to enter a search term. The current folder is searched and results are displayed. Tap **X** to remove the search field.
4. While viewing the list, tap **Menu** for options:
   - **List by**: Display videos by Name (default), Date, Size, or Type.
   - **Share via**: Share the video with Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, YouTube, Gmail, or Email.
   - **Delete**: Tap videos to select them for deletion or tap **Select all** to delete all videos. Tap **Delete** to deleted the selected videos.
   - **Auto play next**: Tap to enable or disable automatic playing of videos in the order they appear.
5. Tap a video to play it. While playing a video, tap the screen to display or hide on-screen playback controls.
6. Tap the icon in the upper left corner of the display screen while the video is playing to change the Display Mode from original size to full screen in ratio or full screen.
   - **Original Size** ( ): Changes the display mode to the original size.
   - **Full-Screen in Ratio View** ( ): Changes the display mode to the full-screen in ratio option. The video is enlarged as much as possible without becoming distorted.
   - **Full-Screen View** ( ): Changes the display mode to full screen. That is, the entire screen is used, which may cause some minor distortion.
7. Tap **SoundAlive** to set the sound quality to Normal, Voice, Movie, or or Virtual 7.1 ch.
8. While the video is playing, tap **Bookmark** to mark your favorite areas of the video. A yellow mark displays on the progress bar.

9. During playback, tap **Menu** for options:
   - **Share via**: Shares that current video via Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi DIrect, Messaging, YouTube, or Gmail.
   - **Chapter preview**: Displays an on-screen picon preview of the various available chapters of the video (broken down in increments based on length).
   - **Trim**: Allows you to edit the length and content of the current video.
   - **Via Bluetooth**: Shares the current via directly via a current Bluetooth connection to an external device.
   - **Video Maker**: Launches the Video Maker application.
   - **Details**: displays file information for the current video.
   - **Time set for auto video off**: Allows you to set an automatic shutoff time for the application.
   - **Settings**: Tap this option to view the following:
     - **Play speed**: Touch and drag the slider to decrease or increase play speed.
     - **Subtitles**: View subtitles for the video, if available.
     - **Auto play next**: Enable or disable auto play of the next video.

For more information, refer to *"Playing Videos"* on page 120.

DivX Overview

This device is able to playback DivX® videos. DivX Certified to play DivX video up to HD 720p, including premium content. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message "Authorization Error" will be displayed and your content will not play.] Learn more at www.divx.com/vod.

Your device must first be registered to playback protected or purchased DivX content. DRM-free or unprotected content does not required DivX VOD registration.

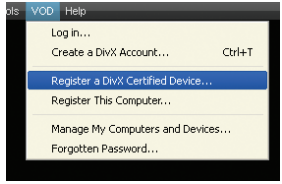
Locating Your VOD Registration Number

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **About device** ➔ **Legal Information** ➔ **License settings** ➔ **DivX® VOD > Register**.
2. Write down your Registration code.
3. Tap **OK**.

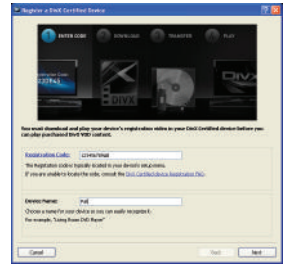
Register Your DivX Device for VOD Playback of Purchased Movies

To play purchased DivX movies on your device, you will first need to complete a one-time registration using both your device and your computer.

1. Write down the DivX registration code that appears on-screen. Copy this 8 or 10-digit number down.
2. Verify you have the latest DivX software running on your computer. Download the free player (for your computer) from www.divx.com.
3. Open the DivX Player on your computer and from within the **VOD** menu, select **Register a DivX Certified Device...**



4. You are prompted to log in or create a DivX account if your account information has not already been saved in DivX Player.
5. Follow the instructions in DivX Player to enter the registration code from step 2 and create a device nickname (ex: “Pat or Pat’s Device”).



6. Select a location on your computer to download the DivX registration video with the same title as your device nickname (ex: Pat.divx).
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to download the file and initiate the transfer process. You will need to place this video file onto your device and play it back.
8. Connect your device to the computer via USB and transfer this video.

9. From the **Registration** screen (Transfer), click T**ransfer Video now** and select the location of the internal storage or **USB** (the device) as the target destination for the registration video (created in step 6) and click **Start**.

   – or –

   Locate the created file, copy and paste it into the new drive letter corresponding to your device's storage location.

10. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **My Files**.
11. Locate your registration DivX video file and tap the file to play it. Once you play the registration file on your device, your registration is complete.
12. Return to the DivX VOD Manager screen (from within your computer's DivX Player) and confirm both your computer and your new device appears in the list of registered DivX devices.

Important! There is no special registration or configuration necessary to playback DRM-free DivX movies. Registration of your device is only required for playback of protected DivX material.

Gallery

Your large LCD screen provides high-resolution display of photos and videos. Use the Gallery to view, capture, and manage photos and videos.

Selecting Photos and Videos to View

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**. All albums display.
2. Tap **Albums** to display other ways to group your photos and videos. Options are:
   - **Albums**: Based on the folder in which they are stored.
   - **Locations**: Based on where taken.
   - **Time**: Based on the time taken.
   - **Person**: Based on face tags applied.
   - **Group**: Based on group tags applied.
3. Tap **Camera** to launch the Camera app.
4. Tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Select album / Select group:** Tap one or more albums or groups that you want to share, stream to another device, or delete.

Viewing Groups of Photos and Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Tap a category and then a group to view it. Thumbnails for each photo and video in the group display.
3. Tap **Slideshow** to view a slideshow of the available pictures and videos.
4. Tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Select item:** Tap one or more items that you want to share, stream to another device, or delete.
   - **Group by**: Further group this group by Location, Time, or Tags, depending on the way you chose the group.

Viewing Photos and Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Select a category and then a group to view it, and then tap a photo or video thumbnail.
3. Tap the screen to show or hide Gallery options.
4. Tap the screen with two fingers or double-tap on the screen to zoom all the way in or out. For more information, refer to *"Pinch"* on page 31.
5. Sweep across the screen to display the next or previous photo or video. (Videos are indicated by the **Play** button.) The current photo or video is outlined in the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen. Tap a thumbnail to view the photo or video it represents.
6. Tap **Share** to use Group Cast, Picasa (photos), Photo editor (photos), Google+, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, Email, or YouTube (videos) to share the photo or video.
7. Tap **Delete** to delete the photo or video being displayed. Tap **OK** to delete the photo or video or **Cancel** to exit.
8. Tap **Slideshow** to view a slideshow of photos and video thumbnails in the category. Tap the screen to stop the slideshow and view the photo or video being displayed.
9. Tap **Menu** to display the following options for photos:
   - **Face tag**: Activate/deactivate face tag technology for people in your photo.

- **Copy to clipboard**: Copies the current image to your device's clipboard.
- **Rotate left**: Allows you to rotate the picture counterclockwise 90 degrees.
- **Rotate right**: Allows you to rotate the picture clockwise 90 degrees.
- **Crop**: Allows you to crop the image. Tap and drag the crop box or the sides or corners of the crop box to create the crop area, then tap **Ok**. Tap **X** to stop without cropping the picture.
- **Edit**: Launches the Photo Editor with the current image selected.
- **Show on map**: This option displays if a Location exists for the photo. A Location is added to the photo if **GPS tag** is set **On** in the Camera settings. Tap this option to open the Map app and display the Location where the photo was taken. For more information, refer to *"Camera Settings"* on page 105.

Caution! Be aware that your location may be present on a photo when posting your photos on the internet.

- **Set as**: allows you to assign the current image as a Contact photo, Home screen, Lock screen, or Home and lock screens.
- **Buddy photo share**: allows you to share the current image with detected person in the photo. The subject tag can be added or deleted.
- **Print**: Print the current photo to a compatible Samsung printer.
- **Rename**: Changes the filename associated to the current image.
- **Details**: Displays the file information such as Title, Time, etc...

Note: Photos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as jpg files. For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 182.

There are only two options for videos that are not playing:

- **Rename**: Enter an new file name.
- **Details**: Provides details about the video such as Title, Time, Duration, File Size, and so on. Tap **Close** to close the pop-up.

For menu options while a video is playing and other video options, see *"Video Player"* on page 113.

Note: Videos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as mp4 files. For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 182.

10. Tap **Back** to return to the category screen.

Setting a Picture As

You can use the photos you take as a contact's photo or as wallpaper for the Home or Lock screen:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Select a category and then a group to view it, and then tap a photo to select it.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Set as**.
4. Tap **Contact photo** and then tap a contact entry.

   – or –

   Tap **Home and lock screens**, **Home screen wallpaper**, or **Lock screen wallpaper**.

   The **Crop picture** screen displays.
5. Touch and drag the crop box or the sides or corners of the crop box to create the crop area, then tap **Done** to save the cropped photo as the contact's icon or wallpaper. Tap **Cancel** to stop without cropping the photo.

Tip: To remove a contact photo, see *"Updating Contacts"* on page 67.

Tip: To change wallpaper, see *"Wallpapers"* on page 42.

Playing Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Select a category and then a group to view it, and then tap a video thumbnail to play the video.

Note: Videos are marked with a **Play** button.

3. Tap **Pause** to pause the video.
4. Tap **Resume** to resume playing the video.
5. Touch and drag the white dot on the progress bar to fast forward or rewind the video. Tap the left end of the progress bar to restart the video. Tap the right end of the progress bar to end the video playback.

   – or –

   Tap **Rewind** to restart the video or **Fast Forward** to end the video.

Sharing Photos and Videos

To share photos and videos with your friends:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Select a category and then a group to display thumbnails.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Select item**.
4. Select one or more photos and videos to highlight them for sharing.
5. Tap **Share**.
6. Tap **Deselect all** in the Selected drop-down to unhighlight photos and videos.
7. Tap **Group Cast**, **Picasa** (photos only), **Google+**, **Bluetooth**, **Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging**, **YouTube** (videos only), **Gmail**, or **Email** then follow the prompts.

Photo Editor

The Photo editor application provides basic editing functions for photos that you take on your device. Along with basic image tuning like brightness, contrast, and color, it also provides a wide variety of effects used for editing the photo.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Photo editor**.
2. Tap **Select picture** to edit a picture in your Gallery.

   – or –

   Tap **Take a picture** to take a picture with the camera.
3. Tap the picture and it is loaded into the Photo editor.
4. Use the following Photo editor controls to edit your photo:

Selection: Tap the selection icon and then tap **Magnetic**, **Lasso**, **Brush**, **Round**, or **Square** to set how to mark an area for cropping, rotating, and so on.

- Tap to select a single area, to add to a selected area, or to remove part of a selected area.

Selection Size: Set the size of the Grab selection area. Drag the slider from small to large.

Inverse: Select the entire picture except for the selected area.

Undo: Remove the last change.

Redo: Restore a removed change.

Rotate: Rotate a photo to the left or to the right or create a mirror image of the photo.

Resize: Touch and then drag the corners of the photo to resize it.

Crop: Tap to crop (cut-out) an area of a photo.

Color: Set the **Auto adjustment**, **Exposure**, **Saturation**, **Contrast**, **Brightness**, and **Hue** of a photo. You can also make it **Grey-scale** or add a **Temperature** effect.

Effects: Add various effects to your photo, such as **Blur**, **Motion**, **Distortion**, **Filter**, or **Frames**.

Tools: Copy and Paste to another image or to the original image. You can use the Spot healing option.

5. When all updates to the photo have been made, tap **Save**. Use the keyboard to name the edited photo and tap **OK** to save it.
6. While editing a photo, tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Select picture**: Open a new photo for editing.
   - **Take picture**: Open the Camera and take a new photo.
   - **Share via**: Send photos to another device or another person. Options are: Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Group Cast, Messaging, Picasa, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - **Set as**: Use this photo as a **Contact photo**, a **Home and lock screens**, **Home screen wallpaper**, or **Lock screen wallpaper** image.

Media Hub

Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content. With hundreds of titles available at your fingertips, entertaining on the go has never been easier. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and conveniently watch anywhere. Featuring the stunning viewing quality Samsung is known for, Samsung Media Hub is your gateway to mobile video like you have never experienced it before.

Tip: A shortcut to Media Hub appears on the main Home screen by default.

Note: Media Hub service requires a Samsung account and depends on service availability.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Media Hub**.
2. Read the End-User License Agreement (EULA), tap **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**, and then select **Accept** to continue or **Decline** to exit.

   The Media Hub screen displays.

3. To rent or buy media, you must have a Samsung account. Tap **Menu** ➔ **My Profile** to sign in to your Samsung account or to create an account. Follow the prompts to complete log-in.
4. Browse content using these options:
   - **What's New**: Recently-added titles for rent or purchase.
   - **Movies**: Movies you can rent or purchase.
   - **TV Shows**: TV shows you can rent or purchase.
   - **My Media**: Content you have previously purchased or rented.
5. When you find media you want to view, use these options:
   - **View trailer**: View a short clip from the movie or show.
   - **Buy**: Purchase the media for unlimited viewing on your device. Follow the prompts to enter payment details.
   - **Rent**: Purchase a time-limited download of the media. Follow the prompts to enter payment details.
6. For additional information about Media Hub, tap **Menu** ➔ **Help**.

Media Hub Notices

- Any media item (Media Content) may be rented or purchased after you create an account in Media Hub.
- Media Content that is downloaded may be viewed concurrently on up to five (5) devices with Media Hub that are also registered to the same account.
- You may choose to remove a device from your account no more than once every 90 days.
- You may remove Media Content from a device as many times as you like. You will have the ability to re-download the Media Content at a later point in time subject to content re-download availability and studio permissions.
- You MUST be in network coverage to license Media Content you have acquired through the Service.
- You can use 3G, 4G, or Wi-Fi connectivity in order to download Media Content.
- Unlike purchased Media Content, rented Media Content will be viewable on only 1 device in your account.
- Media Content is downloaded and saved onto the SD card.

- Your Media Content may pause/stop or not download in networks where there is a weak signal.
- You may begin watching downloaded Media Content as soon as a) license acquisition has occurred and b) sufficient amount of the Media Content has been buffered.
- You must finish watching rented Media Content within 24 consecutive hours of start of playback.
  - Stopping, pausing, or restarting rented Media Content does not extend the available viewing time.
  - In no event will rented Media Content be available for a period of more than thirty (30) days (or shorter on a title-by-title basis) after the Media Content has been rented (e.g., if you begin viewing rented Media Content on the 29th day after the rental transaction, but do not finish viewing the entire title, that rented Media Content may not be available for the entire twenty-four (24) consecutive hour period if such period would extend the viewable time beyond the thirty (30) day rental window).
- You cannot play any media content downloaded from Media Hub through any output on your mobile device, including All Share.

Play Movies & TV

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Choose from thousands of movies, including new releases and HD titles in the Play Store and stream them instantly on your Android device or tablet.

Movies, previously rented via the Play Store are automatically added to your My Movies library across your devices.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at: http://play.google.com/about/movies.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Movies & TV**.
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list.
3. Following the on-screen instructions for renting and viewing movies.
4. Tap the **MOVIES** tab to view movies you have rented.
5. Tap the **TV SHOWS** tab to view shows you have rented.
6. Tap the **PERSONAL VIDEOS** tab to view movies you have on your device or memory card.

Play Music

Also known as Google Music, allows you to browse, shop, and playback songs purchased from the Play Store. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Music library and instantly ready to play or download.

- Access the new music tab from within your Play Store application.

The Music application contains a music player that plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

Accessing the Music App

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
   The Play Music app searches your online library and your device's internal storage for music and playlists. This can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application.
2. If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to link your current account to Google Play Music.
3. Tap an on-screen account to add it or select **Add account** to use a new account.
4. At the free songs screen, select either **Get free songs** or **Skip**.
   - Get free songs are downloaded via either the Internet or Play Store.
   - Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.
5. Swipe left or right to browse through your new and available music. Music, albums, and artists are grouped into categories.
   It then displays a carousel view of your new and recent music, organized by album.

6. Swipe left or right to spin the carousel and browse through your new and recent music.

7. Tap an album to open it.
8. Return to the Library screen from most other screens in the Music application by tapping the Music application icon **Music notification icon** at the bottom-left of the screen.

Changing Library View

You can change the way you view the contents of your library.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. While in a selection or screen, tap (near the top-left of the Application bar) or the tab name to back up to the main Music App menu.
3. Tap the name of the current view, such as **Recent**, near the top-left of the Application bar.
4. Tap an option to set how you view your library.

   The choices are: **Recent**, **Albums**, **Artists**, **Songs**, **Playlists**, or **Genres**.

Tab Options

There are various options available from the various tabs:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. From the upper-left of the application window, tap **Options** to access an available option.
   - **Recent:** to display the most recently played songs and albums
   - **Albums:** Play, Add to queue, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.
   - **Artists:** Play, Add to queue, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, or Search.
   - **Songs:** Play, Add to queue, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, Delete, or Search.
   - **Playlist:** Play, Add to queue, Rename, or Delete.
   - **Genres:** Play, Add to queue, or Search.

Note: The contents of your library display in a scrolling grid, list, or carousel, depending on the view.

Searching for Music

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap **Search**.
3. Type the name of an artist, album, song, or playlist.
4. Tap a matching song to play it, tap a matching album, artist or playlist to view a list of its' songs.

   – or –

   Tap **Options** next to an item in the list to play it, add to queue, add it to a playlist, or shop for other music by the artist online.

Changing Music Settings

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap **Menu**. The following options display depending on the library view:
   - **Shuffle all**: Play all songs in a random order.
   - **Hide now playing bar / Show now playing bar**: Hide or show the Now Playing bar that displays at the bottom of the screen. You can return to the **Now playing** screen from other Music screens by tapping the name of the current song in the Now Playing bar.
   - **Choose on-device music**: In addition to playing the music that you add to your online library, you can play music stored on your device's internal storage. Then you can listen to music when you have no Internet connection. To do this, make some of your online music available offline.

     For more information, refer to *"Making Online Music Available Offline"* on page 132.
   - **On device only**: Display only the music that is available offline and only on the device.

- **Hide labels / Show labels**: Hide or show labels. This option is not available in all library views.
- **Settings**: Provides access to the Play Music settings.
- **Help**: Displays application help information.

Listening to Music

You can listen to music by using your device's built-in speakers, through a wired headset, or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Press the **Volume Key** on the side of the device to activate on-screen volume control, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume. You can also press the Volume Key to adjust playback volume.

Options While Selecting a Song

The following options are available for playing songs, albums, or playlist, finding more information about artists, finding more music, and deleting songs:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Select an album or song.
3. Tap the label area **Options** under an item.

   The following options display depending on the item view:

   - **Play**: Plays the selected song, album, or playlist.
   - **Add to queue**: Add the song to a new playback queue.
   - **Add to playlist**: Add the song to a new playlist or an existing playlist.
   - **More by artist**: Searches for more songs by the same artist.
   - **Shop for artist**: Launches Google to search for more songs by the selected artist.
   - **Delete**: Delete the song.
   - **Search**: Search Internet, Music player, Play Music, or YouTube for an artist, album, or song.

Playing Music

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap a song in your library to listen to it.

   – or –

   While viewing a list of songs, tap **Options** next to a song and select **Play**.

   – or –

   While viewing a list of albums, artists, playlists, or genres, locate the label area **Options** under an item and tap **Play**.

   The **Now playing** screen opens and the song you selected or the first song in the album or playlist starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.

Note: If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen in the Music application, the Now Playing bar displays at the bottom of the screen. You can use this to control playback or tap **Menu** ➔ **Hide now playing bar**.

Displaying the Now Playing Screen

If you navigate away from the **Now playing** screen, to return to the **Now playing** screen from other Music screens:

- Tap the name of the current song in the Now Playing bar.

  – or –

  Tap the Music notification icon in the System Bar (bottom-right of screen), and from the Status Details panel, select the song title.

  You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next or previous song in the Status Details panel.

  For more information, refer to *"Notifications"* on page 32.

Options While Playing a Song

When you play a song, the **Now playing** screen displays. There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap an album or song. For more information, refer to *"Playing Music"* on page 129.

   The **Now playing** screen displays.
3. Tap the **SONG** title to add the song to a playlist.
4. Tap the **ARTIST** name to view information about the artist associated with this song.
5. Tap **ALBUM** to list and play the songs on the album.
6. Tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Clear queue**: Erases the current playback queue.
   - **Save queue**: Stores the current playback queue.
   - **Settings**: Displays the Music settings screen.
   - **Help**: Displays the application's Help information.
7. Tap **Options** ➔ **Add to playlist** to add the song to a playlist.
8. The **Now playing** screen contains several buttons that you can tap to control the playback of songs, albums, and playlists:

   Tap Thumbs up or Thumbs down to add the song to a Thumbs up or Thumbs down playlist.

   Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.

   Tap to pause playback.

   Tap to resume playback

Tap to advance to the next song. Touch and hold to scan forward through the current song.

When Shuffle mode is enabled, songs play in random order. When disabled, songs play in the order they appear in List view.

Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode.

Creating a Playlist

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap the **Playlists** library view.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **New playlist**. The New playlist pop-up displays.
4. Tap the **NAME** field to enter a name for the playlist.
5. Tap **OK** to save the new playlist.

Adding Songs To a Playlist

To add a song to a new or existing playlist while the song is playing:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
3. Tap ➔ **Options** ➔ **Add to playlist** field (at the left of the screen).
   - If the Add to new playlist pop-up displays, tap the **NAME** field to enter a name for the playlist.
4. Select the existing playlist. The playlist is saved with the song added to it.

Playing, Renaming, or Deleting a Playlist

To play, rename, or delete a playlist:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Display the **Playlists** library view.
3. Tap next to a playlist title.
   - Tap **Play** to play the songs in the playlist.

Note: Renaming and Deleting is only available with end-user created playlists and not the device default entries.

- Tap **Add to queue** to add the current playlist files to the queue.
- Tap **Rename** and use the keyboard to enter a new name for the playlist.
- Tap **Delete** and then tap **OK** to delete the playlist. Only the playlist is deleted. To delete individual songs, see *"Options While Selecting a Song"* on page 128.

Shopping for Music at the Play Store

To visit the Google Play™ Store where you can find and buy music:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Tap **Play Store** in the Application Bar.

   The Google Play Store music section displays.

   – or –

   Tap **Menu** ➔ **Help** ➔ **Music** to view information about finding and buying music.

Making Online Music Available Offline

In addition to playing the music that you add to your online library, you can play music stored on your device's internal storage. Then you can listen to music when you have no Internet connection. To do this, make some of your online music available offline.

Tip: You can also copy music directly from your computer to your device. For more information, refer to *"Synchronizing with Windows Media Player"* on page 160.

To make your online music available offline on your device:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.
2. Change your library view to Albums, Artists, or playlists. For more information, refer to *"Changing Library View"* on page 126.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Choose on-device music** and tap the album or playlist you want to make available offline.

   A green pin indicates that the item is already available offline.

   Gray pins appear next to the items you can make available offline. A bar at the bottom of the screen shows how much space is available on your device for music and other files.

   Dim green pins indicate songs or albums that you copied directly from a computer to your device.
4. Tap the gray pin next to each item you want to make available offline or tap a green pin to stop making it available offline. You can switch to other views of your library to make other kinds of items available offline as well.
5. Tap **Done** in the bar at the bottom of the screen.

   The Music application starts downloading the items to your device.

Music Player

The Music Player plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer. The Music Player is an application that can play music files. The music player supports files with extensions AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MP3, WMA, 3GP, MP4, and M4A. Launching the Music Player allows you to navigate through your music library, play songs, and create playlists (music files bigger than 300 KB are displayed).

Playing Music

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.

   The Music Player application searches your device's internal storage for music and playlists. This can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application. It then displays your music in several ways.

2. Tap **Songs**, **Playlists**, **Albums**, **Artists**, **Genres**, **Folders**, **Composers**, **Years**, or **Music square** from the left of the screen to change the way you view the contents of your library.
3. Scroll through the list and tap an entry to begin playback.
4. Tap the Music application icon at the top-left of the Application bar to return to the previous Music screen.

Note: The 5.1 channel sound effect works when earphones or sound is connected through the headset jack only.

Managing Your Music

Searching for Music

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Tap **Search**.
3. Type the name of an artist, album, or song.

   Matching songs are displayed in a list below the search box.
4. Tap a matching song to play it. Select a matching album, or artist to view a list of its songs.

Making a Song a Ringtone

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Set as alarm tone**.
3. Tap the desired song.
4. Tap **Set** to assign the new ringtone.

Creating a Playlist

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player** ➔ **Playlists**.
2. Tap ➔ **New playlist**.
3. Select the name field to enter a name for the playlist.
4. Tap **OK** to save the new playlist.

Renaming a Playlist

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Music Player**.
2. Tap **Playlists**, select a playlist, and then tap **Menu** → **Rename playlist**.
3. Tap the name field to enter a new name for the playlist.
4. Tap **OK** to save the new playlist.

Adding Songs to Playlists

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Music Player**.
2. Tap and select a playlist.

   – or –

   Tap **Playlists**, select a playlist, and then tap **Add music**.

   All songs are displayed.
3. Tap next to each song you want to add or next to **Add all** to add all songs to the playlist.

   The songs appear under the playlist to the right of the songs list.
4. Tap **Done** to save the playlist.

Removing Songs from Playlists

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Music Player**.
2. Tap and select a playlist.

   All songs are displayed to the left of the playlist and the songs in the playlist are displayed on the right, under the playlist name.
3. Tap to remove a song from the playlist.
4. Tap **Done** to save the playlist.

Changing the Order of a Playlist

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Music Player**.
2. Tap **Playlists** and select a playlist.
3. Tap **Reorder** to change the order of the songs. Tap the grid on an entry and drag the entry to a new position in the list.
4. Tap **Done** to change the order and save the playlist.

Playing a Playlist

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Display the **Playlists** library view.
3. Tap **Favorites**, **Most played**, **Recently added**, or tap a playlist title that you created.
4. Select a song to start playing the playlist at that song.

Deleting a Playlist

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Tap **Playlists** and select a playlist.
3. Tap **Delete** in the Application bar.
4. Tap the box next to a playlist title. A check mark indicates the playlist is to be deleted.
5. Tap **Remove** ➔ **OK** to delete the selected playlist.

Changing Music Settings

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Delete**: Tap the box for any song or album you want to delete or tap the box for **Select all** to select every song or album. A check mark indicates the song or album is to be deleted. Tap **Delete** to delete the selected items.
   - **Share via**: Share your music by using Group Cast, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email. Select the songs you want to share and tap **Share**.
   - **Set as alarm tone**: Choose a song and tap **Set** to use the song as an alarm tone.
   - **Settings**: The following settings display:

     Advanced
     - **Sound settings**: Choose **SoundAlive** and **Play speed** settings.
     - **Lyrics**: Display the lyrics of the song, if available.
     - **Music auto off**: Set the option Off or set your music to turn off automatically After 15 mins, After 30 mins, After 1 hour, After 1 hour 30 mins, or After 2 hours.

Music menu

– **Music menu**: Enable or disable the music display options that appear on the main music screen. A check mark next to an option means that it is enabled.

Listening to Music

You can listen to music by using your device's built-in speakers, through a wired headset or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Press the **Volume Key** on the side of the device to activate on-screen volume control, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume. You can also press the Volume Key to adjust playback volume.

Playing Music

To play a song:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Select a song in your library to listen to it.

   – or –

   While viewing a list of albums or genres, tap the album thumbnail and then tap a song in the list of songs on the album.

   The song you tap starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.

Accessing the Music Player

If you navigate away from the Music Player application and music is playing, you can change songs or easily return to the Music Player:

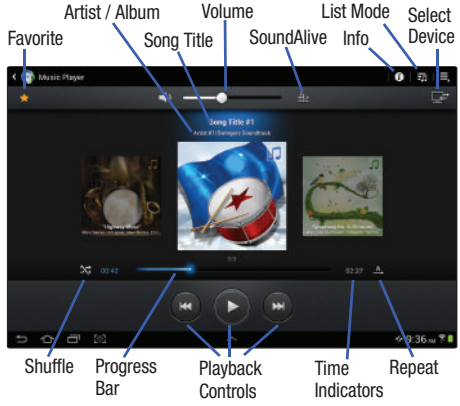
1. Tap the Music notification icon in the System Bar (bottom-right of the screen).
2. In the Status Details, tap the song title to display the Music Player. You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next or previous song in the panel. For more information, refer to *"Notifications"* on page 32.

Music Player Options

Music Player plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
2. Tap a song or playlist to begin playback.

   The music player displays below (portrait mode) or to the right (landscape mode) of the music listing.
3. Tap the music player to enlarge it and tap the screen to display the sound and playlist controls.
4. During playback, use the sound and playlist controls:
   - **Favorite**: Tap the star to mark the current song as a favorite.
   - **Volume**: Tap to toggle Vibration or Silent mode and Sound mode, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume. You can also press the Volume Key on the side of the device to adjust playback volume.
   - **SoundAlive**: Tap to view and set SoundAlive options.
   - **Info**: Tap to view information about the current song.



- **List Mode**: Tap to switch to the list of songs.
- **Select Device**: Use AllShare to stream music to another device. For more information, refer to *"AllShare Play"* on page 164.

- **Shuffle**: When enabled, songs play in random order. When disabled, songs play in the order they appear in List view.
- **Progress Bar**: Touch and drag the end of the progress bar to scan forward or backward through the current song.
- **Playback Controls**: These buttons control the playback of songs:
  - Tap to advance to the next song. Touch and hold to scan forward through the current song.
  - Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.
  - Tap to pause playback. Tap to resume playback.
- **Time Indicators**: The time indicators show, in minutes and seconds, how much of the song has played (left) and the length of the song (right).
- **Repeat**: Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode.

Options While Playing a Song

There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Music Player**, tap a song or an album, and then a song.
2. Tap the music player to enlarge it.
3. Tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Add to playlist**: Add the song to a new playlist or an existing playlist.
   - **Via Bluetooth**: Play the current song by using a Bluetooth device.
   - **Share via**: Share the current song by using Group Cast, Bluetooth, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Gmail, or Email.
   - **Set as alarm tone**: Use the current song as an alarm tone.
   - **Settings**: Displays Music Player settings.
     For more information, refer to *"Changing Music Settings"* on page 136.

T-Mobile TV

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**T-Mobile TV**). The T-Mobile Terms and Conditions page displays.

Note: A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

2. Tap **Accept** if you accept the Terms and Conditions.

   – or –

   Tap **Exit** to close the application.

Note: T-Mobile TV must be initialized over a cellular network before it can be used. During this initial registration process, any current Wi-Fi connections must be disabled.

3. Tap **Disable Wi-Fi** if you currently have an active Wi-Fi connection.
4. Follow the on-screen setup instructions.
5. Tap any of the following categories to begin viewing: **Live TV**, **On Demand**, **My Media**, **More Info**, **Browse**, or **Live Channels**.

Section 8: Web

This section describes the various Internet networking applications available on your device such as Google+ and Internet.

Google+

Share updates and see what is going on around you with Google+ for mobile.

- Share your thoughts and location.
- Instantly upload your photos and videos as you take them.
- Get updates from your circles in the stream.
- Check in to a place.
- Make plans on-the-go with group messaging.
- View posts from people around you.

To get started:

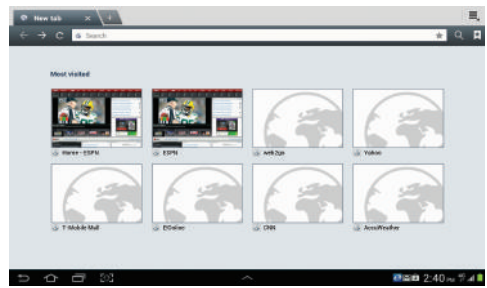
1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Google+**. The Google+ home screen displays.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Help** and then touch a topic to learn more about using Google+.

Internet

Your device is equipped with a full HTML Browser that allows you to access the Internet.

Tip: Internet displays by default as a Primary shortcut on the Home screen.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**. The Most visited screen displays.



3. Tap an entry, such as Google. The Google home screen displays.

Navigating the Internet

1. To select an item, tap an entry.
2. To scroll through a website, sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion.
3. Tap to return to the previous page.

The following options are available for Internet navigation.

Command Keys

- Tap **Back** or to return to the previous page.
- Touch and hold **Back** to display a list of Most visit pages.
- Tap **Forward** to go forward to a recent page.
- Tap **Refresh** to reload the current page.

Touching and Dragging

- Touch and drag your finger on the screen to navigate pages and to reposition pages within the screen.

Entering Text in a Field

- While browsing, tap a text field to display the virtual QWERTY keyboard to enter text.

Zoom

- Tap the screen twice to zoom in or out.
- Use two fingers, such as your index finger and thumb, to zoom out by making an inward pinch motion on the screen. To zoom in, make an outward motion by sweeping your fingers out.

Tip: For convenient browsing, you can rotate the device to landscape mode.

Selecting Items On a Page

While browsing, use gestures and menus to navigate:

- Tap an item to select it.
- Tap a hyperlink to follow the link.
- Touch and hold on a hyperlink for these options:
  - **Open**: Open the linked page.
  - **Open in new tab**: Open a new window to display the linked page.
  - **Save link**: Save the linked page to Download history.
  - **Copy link URL**: Save the link's URL to the clipboard.
  - **Select text**: Copy the link text to the clipboard.

- Touch and hold an image for the additional options:
  - **Save image**: Download an image. View downloaded images in Gallery.
  - **Copy image**: Copy an image to the clipboard.
  - **View image**: View the image source.
  - **Set as wallpaper**: Use the image as your home screen wallpaper.

Using Browser Windows

You can have multiple windows open at one time and easily switch between windows.

To add a new window:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. To open a new window, tap **New window** at the top of the screen.
3. To switch to another open window, tap its tab at the top of the screen.

To delete an existing window:

- To delete an open window, tap the tab at the top of the screen, and then tap .

Entering a URL

Access a website quickly by entering the URL.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. Tap the **URL** field at the top of the screen, then enter the URL using the virtual QWERTY keyboard.

   As you enter characters, potential matches display.

Note: Use the **Delete** key to clear the URL field, if necessary.

3. Tap a match to complete the URL.

   – or –

   Tap **Go** to proceed to the desired Web address.

Copying Fields or Text

Copy information from a webpage to the clipboard for pasting, searching, or sharing.

Selecting, Copying, and Pasting Text

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. Browse to a webpage.
3. On the webpage, touch and hold on the text until you see the text you want highlighted, then stop tapping the screen.

   The text is highlighted.
4. Touch and drag the tabs to the left or right to select more or less text.
5. Tap **Copy** at the top of the screen to copy the selected text or tap **Done** to stop.
6. To paste the copied text, navigate to the desired field (or to another application), then touch and hold in a text field and tap **Paste** in the pop-up.

Copying and Pasting a Hyperlink or URL

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. Browse to a webpage.
3. Touch and hold on the link or URL, then tap **Copy link URL** on the pop-up menu.
4. To paste the copied link or URL, navigate to the desired field (or to another application), then touch and hold in a text field and tap **Paste** on the pop-up menu.

Using Bookmarks

While browsing, bookmark a site to quickly access it later.

Creating a bookmark

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. Browse to a website, then tap **Add bookmark**.

   The **Add bookmark** options list displays. Confirm the **Name** and URL **Address** for the bookmark.
3. In the **Account** field, tap the drop-down menu, and tap **Local** or an account.
4. In the **Folder** field, tap the drop-down menu, and select **Homescreen**, **Bookmarks**, or a **Other folder**.
5. Tap **OK** to save the bookmark.

   A gold star displays on the Bookmarked page.

Accessing Bookmarks and History

Launch a bookmarked page or reload recent pages.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. Tap **Bookmarks**, **History**, and **Saved pages**.
3. On the **Bookmarks** tab, use these options:
   - Tap a bookmark to load the page.
   - Touch and hold on a bookmark for these options:
     - **Open**: Open the bookmarked page.
     - **Open in new tab**: Open the linked page in a new window.
     - **Edit bookmark**: Make changes to the bookmark description.
     - **Add shortcut to home screen**: Create a bookmark on the Home screen.
     - **Share link**: Use Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the link.
     - **Copy link URL**: Save the link's URL to the clipboard.
     - **Delete bookmark**: Remove the bookmark.
     - **Set as homepage**: Assign the bookmarked link as the home page.
4. On the **History** tab, tap **Today**, **Yesterday**, **Last month**, **Older**, or **Most visited** to use these options:
   - Tap a page to reload it.
   - Tap the next to a page to bookmark it. Tap a gold star next to a page to remove the bookmark.
   - Touch and hold on a page for these options:
     - **Open**: Open the webpage.
     - **Open in new tab**: Launch the webpage in a new window.
     - **Add bookmark/Remove from Bookmarks**: Bookmark the page or remove the bookmark for this page.
     - **Share link**: Use Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the link.
     - **Copy link URL**: Save the link's URL to the clipboard.
     - **Remove from history**: Remove the record of this page.
     - **Set as homepage**: Assign the bookmarked link as the home page.
5. On the **Saved pages** tab, use these options:
   - Tap a page to reload it.
   - Touch and hold on a page and then select **Delete saved page** to remove the page from Saved pages.

Internet Menu

While viewing a webpage, tap **Menu** for the following options:

- **New tab**: Open the webpage in a new window, under a new tab.
- **New incognito tab**: Open the webpage in a new window, under a new tab, and the pages you view in the new window will not appear in your browser history or search history. See the on-screen explanation of **going incognito**.
- **Add shortcut to home screen**: Add the URL for this webpage as a shortcut on the first home screen.
- **Share page**: Use Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the webpage URL.
- **Find on page**: Search for content on the current page.
- **Desktop view**: Your browser displays a website in a modified format that makes it easier to read. Desktop view displays a website the same way it would appear on a PC.
- **Save for offline reading**: Saves the webpage so you can read it later even when offline.
- **Downloads**: View and manage recent downloads.
- **Print**: Print the current screen or page to a Samsung printer.
- **Settings**: Configure web settings.

Internet Settings

Use the browser settings to customize the browser.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. While viewing a webpage, tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings**. Customize the Browser by using the following options:

General

- **Set home page**: View and set the default first page that displays when you launch Internet.
- **Form auto-fill**: Enable or disable form auto-fill to complete Internet forms with a single click.
- **Auto-fill text**: If **Form auto-fill** is enabled, set up the following information:
  - **Full name**: Enter your name.
  - **Company name**: Enter a company name.
  - **Address line 1**: Enter your address.
  - **Address line 2**: Enter any additional address information.
  - **City/Town**: Enter your city and town.
  - **County**: Enter your county.
  - **Zip code**: Enter your ZIP code.
  - **Country**: Enter your country.

– **Phone**: Enter your telephone number.
– **Email**: Enter a valid email address.

Privacy and security

- **Clear cache**: Delete content and databases stored on the device.
- **Clear history**: Delete the list of previously-visited pages.
- **Show security warnings**: When enabled, the browser warns you if there is a problem with a site's security.
- **Accept cookies**: When enabled, allows the browser to save and read cookie information used by webpages.
- **Clear all cookie data**: Delete cookie information saved to the device.
- **Remember form data**: When enabled, stores information you enter into forms to make future forms easier.
- **Clear form data**: Deletes saved form information.
- **Enable location**: When enabled, sites you visit can request access to your location.
- **Clear location access**: Clear location access for all websites.
- **Remember passwords**: When enabled, saves user names and passwords for sites you visit, to make future visits easier.
- **Clear passwords**: Clear all saved user names and passwords.
- **Enable notifications**: Adjusts the notification status for Web activity. Choose from: Always on, On demand, or Off.
- **Clear notifications**: Removed Web notification access information.

Accessibility

- **Force zoom**: Override the website's request to control zoom.
- **Text size**: Use the Preview field and the following controls to configure text size:
  – **Scale text up and down**: Scale the text size up or down using a slider bar.
  – **Zoom amount on double tap**: Set how much to zoom when you double-tap the screen, from 175 to 225 percent.
  – **Minimum font size**: Set the minimum font size, which can range from 1 point to 24 points.
- **Inverted screen rendering**: Use the Preview screen and the following controls to configure inverted screen rendering:
  – **Inverted rendering**: Enable the display of websites with inverted colors – black becomes white and vice versa.
  – **Contrast**: If Inverted rendering is enabled, use this slider to set the contrast, which can range from 100 to 300 percent.

Advanced

- **Select search engine**: Choose a search engine from Google, Yahoo!, or Bing.
- **Open in background**: When enabled, new windows open behind the current window.
- **Enable JavaScript**: When enabled, Internet automatically runs JavaScript scripts on pages you visit.
- **Enable plug-ins**: When enabled, Internet automatically loads and runs plug-ins on pages you visit.
- **Default storage**: Assigns the default storage location for Browser downloads.
- **Website settings**: View and manage settings for individual websites.
- **Default zoom**: Adjusts the zoom feature. Set to Far, Medium, or Close.
- **Open pages in overview**: When enabled, displays an overview of newly-opened pages.
- **Auto-fit pages**: When enabled, Internet automatically sizes webpages to fit your device's display.
- **Block pop-ups**: When enabled, blocks pop-up windows.
- **Text encoding**: Choose a default character set for webpages.
- **Reset to default:** Clear all browser data and reset all settings to the factory defaults.

Bandwidth management

- **Preload search results**: Enable the browser to preload high confidence search results in the background to help speed up searches. Options are: Never, Only via Wi-Fi, or Always.
- **Load images**: When enabled, images are automatically loaded when you visit a page. When disabled, images are indicated by a link, which you can tap to download the picture.

Labs

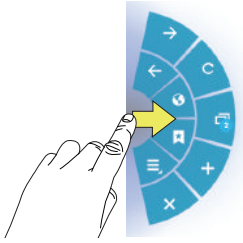
- **Quick controls**: When enabled, the Application and URL bars are hidden. To access the hidden controls, swipe inward from the left or right edge of the screen to access Quick Controls. For more information, refer to *"Internet Quick Controls"* on page 149.
- **Google Instant**: When enabled, you can use Google Instant when you use Google Search to show results as you type. Enabling this option can increase data use.

Internet Quick Controls

Use Quick Controls to maximize your viewing area while browsing the internet.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Internet**.
2. While viewing a webpage, tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Labs**, and then tap **Quick Controls** to enable the function.

   The Application and URL bars are hidden.
3. Swipe inward from the left or right edge of the device screen to access quick controls.



4. Without lifting your finger, move to an option and then lift your finger to initiate the option.
5. To cancel, display the Quick controls and tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Labs** and tap **Quick controls** to uncheck it.

Section 9: Connections

Your device includes features to connect to the internet and to other devices by using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or a USB cable.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi is a wireless networking technology that provides access to local area networks. Use your device's Wi-Fi feature to:

- Access the internet for browsing or to send and receive email.
- Access your corporate network.
- Use hotspots provided by hotels or airports while traveling.

Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing Wireless Access Point (WAP). WAPs can be Open (unsecured, as with most hotspots) or Secured (requiring you to provide login credentials). Your device supports the 802.11 a/b/g/n Wi-Fi protocol.

Configuring Wi-Fi Settings

For more information about configuring your device's Wi-Fi settings, see *"Wi-Fi"* on page 202.

Finding Wi-Fi Networks

You can have your device automatically notify you of available networks. For more information, refer to *"Advanced Settings"* on page 203.

Turning Wi-Fi On or Off

Turn your device's Wi-Fi service on or off. When you turn Wi-Fi service on, your device automatically searches for available, in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

By default, your device's Wi-Fi feature is turned off (deactivated). Activating Wi-Fi allows your device to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

Turning Wi-Fi On:

1. From any screen, tap the Time in the Status Bar.
   The Status Details displays.
2. Tap **Wi-Fi** to turn Wi-Fi On.

– or –

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.

2. Under **Wireless and network**, on the Wi-Fi tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Wi-Fi on.

Turning Wi-Fi Off:

1. From any screen, tap the Time in the Status Bar.
   The Status Details displays.
2. Tap **Wi-Fi** to turn Wi-Fi Off.

Wi-Fi Status Indicators

The following icons indicate the Wi-Fi connection status:

Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.

Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Scanning and Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network

When you turn on Wi-Fi, your device searches for available Wi-Fi connections, then displays them on screen.

1. From any screen, tap the Time in the Status Bar.
   The Status Details displays.
2. Tap **Wi-Fi** to turn Wi-Fi On. Your device automatically scans for available Wireless Access Points.
3. When the scan is complete, select a Wi-Fi network to connect. If the Wi-Fi network is open, your device automatically connects. If the Wi-Fi network is secured, enter the password at the prompt to connect.
4. Tap **Connect**.

Adding a Wi-Fi Network Manually

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Under **Wireless and network**, on the Wi-Fi tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Wi-Fi on.
3. Tap **Add Wi-Fi network**, then enter network information:
   - **Network SSID**: Enter the name of the Wi-Fi Wireless Access Point (WAP).
   - **Security**: Select the type of security used by the WAP.

Note: Depending on the Security protocol used by the WAP, additional network information may be required, such as a Password.

- **Password**: If the WAP is secured, enter the password or hex key.

4. Tap **Save** to save the settings.

Wi-Fi Sleep Policy

Specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Under **Wireless and network**, tap **Wi-Fi**.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Advanced**.
4. Tap **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**. Choose from: **Always**, **Only when plugged in**, or **Never (increases data usage)**.

Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct allows device-to-device connections so you can transfer large amounts of data over a Wi-Fi connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Wi-Fi Direct**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Wi-Fi Direct on.

   If you are currently connected to a Wi-Fi network, a prompt displays **Start Wi-Fi Direct operation. This will turn off Wi-Fi client/hotspot operation**.
3. Tap **OK** to continue.

   Your device will begin to search for other devices enabled with Wi-Fi direct connections.

Note: Confirm (**Wi-Fi Direct On**) appears at the bottom of the screen.

4. Tap the Wi-Fi Direct field to display Available devices.
5. Enable Wi-Fi Direct (similar to Steps 1 and 2) on the device to which you want to connect.

Note: The target device must also have Wi-Fi Direct service active and running before it is detected by your device.

6. Tap **Scan** and select the single device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.
7. Once the device you want to connect to is displayed, tap it.

   An Invitation to connect displays on the device to which you want to connect.
8. On that target device, tap **Accept**.

   You have 2 minutes to tap **Accept** on the device to which you want to connect for the connection to be made.

   Once connected, the other device will show as **Connected** in your list of Wi-Fi Direct devices and the icon will display at the bottom of your screen.

Sharing Information with a Connected Device

To share videos, photos, or other information with the connected device, follow these steps:

1. View the information that you want to share. For example, if you want to share a photo, find the photo in your camera viewer or **Files** folder, then tap the **Share, Share via,** or **Send via** option.
2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** option.

   The Wi-Fi Direct settings screen displays, Wi-Fi Direct is turned on, and your device scans for other devices.
3. Tap a connected device name. For example, Android_XXXX.
4. The other device displays a pop-up that indicates it is receiving the file.

   The file is transferred and can be found in **Files** within the ShareViaWifi folder.

Note: Depending on the other device model, the prompts and shared folder information may differ.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-range wireless communications technology for exchanging information over a distance of about 30 feet.

You do not need to line up the devices to send information with Bluetooth. If the devices are in range, you can exchange information between them, even if they are in different rooms.

Configuring Bluetooth Settings

Configure your device's Bluetooth settings. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 204.

Turning Bluetooth On or Off

To turn Bluetooth on:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Under **Wireless and network**, on the Bluetooth tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Bluetooth on.

Note: When Bluetooth is on, the **Bluetooth** icon displays in the Status Bar.

To turn Bluetooth on or off:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Under **Wireless and network**, on the Bluetooth tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon again to turn Bluetooth off.

Bluetooth Settings

The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device's Bluetooth service, including:

- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device's visibility (or "discoverability") for other Bluetooth devices
- Displaying your device's Bluetooth address

To access the Bluetooth Settings menu:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Under **Wireless and network**, on the Bluetooth tab, tap **Menu.**
3. Tap the **Rename device**, **Visible time-out,** and **Received files** fields to set the options.

To change your Bluetooth name:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth page, tap **Menu** ➔ **Rename device**.
3. Enter a new name.
4. Tap **OK** to complete the rename process.

To change your Bluetooth visibility time out value:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth page, tap **Menu** ➔ **Visible time-out**.
3. Select a time out value. Choose from: 2 min, 5 min, 1 hour, Never timeout.

To view files received via Bluetooth devices:

1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth page, tap **Menu** ➔ **Received files** to display a list of files received from external sources via Bluetooth communication.
3. Tap to return to the previous page.

Pairing with a Bluetooth Device

Search for a Bluetooth device and pair with it, to exchange information between your device and the target device.

Tip: After pairing, your device and the target device recognize each other and exchange information without having to enter a passcode or PIN.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. On the Bluetooth field, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Tap the **Bluetooth** tab and then enable the target device's discoverable or visible mode.
4. Tap **Scan**. Your device displays a list of discovered in-range Bluetooth devices.
5. Tap **Stop** at any time to stop scanning.

6. From the list of found devices, tap the target device, then follow the prompts to complete the pairing:
   - If the target device requires a PIN, enter a PIN for the target device and tap **OK**. When prompted, enter the PIN on the target device.
   - If the device allows automatic or smart pairing, your device attempts to pair with the device automatically. Follow the prompts on your device and the target device to complete the pairing.
7. Confirm is now showing your devices are paired.

Sharing Data with a Bluetooth Device

To send data to a Bluetooth device:

1. Select a file or item from an appropriate application.
2. Select an option for sharing data with the Bluetooth feature.

Note: The method for selecting an option may vary by data type.

---

3. Search for and pair with a Bluetooth device. For more information, refer to *"Pairing with a Bluetooth Device"* on page 155.

Receiving Data from a Bluetooth Device

To receive data from a Bluetooth device:

1. Turn Bluetooth on. For more information, refer to *"Turning Bluetooth On or Off"* on page 154.

Note: To select the length of time that your device will be visible, select **Menu** ➔ **Visible time-out**.

---

2. Pair with the Bluetooth device from which you want to receive data. For more information, refer to *"Pairing with a Bluetooth Device"* on page 155.

   A Bluetooth authorization request pop-up displays when a Bluetooth device sends data to your device.
3. Select **Accept** to confirm that you are willing to receive data. A File received message displays.

Received data is saved to the Bluetooth folder. If you receive a contact, it is saved to your contacts automatically.

USB Tethering

This option allows you to share your device's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and computer. A wireless version of this same functionality would be the Mobile AP feature.

Note: If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Mobile HotSpot**).
   – or –
   From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Tethering and Mobile HotSpot**.
2. Plug in the USB cable between your computer and your device.
3. When prompted for a USB mode, tap to exit the menu.
4. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu. This places a green check mark next to the entry and activates the feature. A Tethering or HotSpot active notification briefly appears on the screen.
   Look for the USB Tethering active icon in the Status bar area of the screen.

To disconnect tethering:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Mobile HotSpot**).
2. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu to remove the check mark and deactivate the feature.
3. Remove the USB cable from the device.

Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot

This feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

Important! The Mobile AP service can not be active at the same time as Wi-Fi. Please close your Wi-Fi connection prior to launching the Mobile AP service.

Note: You must have a tethering plan on your account to use the Wi-Fi HotSpot. You can not use data on the device while it is being used as a hotspot.

To edit the Portable Wi-Fi HotSpot information:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Mobile HotSpot**).

   – or –

   From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Tethering and Mobile HotSpot**.
2. On the Mobile HotSpot field, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn the feature on.
3. Tap the **Network SSID** field and edit the name if desired.
4. Select a Security option and enter a new security option (**Open**, **WPA-PSK**, or **WPA2-PSK**).
5. With security enabled, delete the previous password and enter a new one into the **Password** field.
6. Tap **Save** to store the new settings.
7. Confirm the Mobile HotSpot active icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

Note: Using your 4G service and Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot drains your device's battery at a much faster rate than when using any other feature combination.
The best way to keep using the device as a hotspot is to have it connected to a power supply.

To connect to the HotSpot:

1. Enable Wi-Fi (wireless) functionality on your target device (laptop, media device, etc.).
2. Scan for Wi-Fi networks from the device and select your device hotspot from the network list.
   - The SSID name for your device's hotspot is determined by what you entered into the **Network SSID** field.
   - You can change the name by tapping **Mobile HotSpot** ➔ **Configure** ➔ **Network SSID** and changing the entry.
3. Select this HotSpot and follow your on-screen instructions to complete the connection.
4. Launch your Web browser to confirm you have an Internet connection.

To secure the Mobile HotSpot service:

The two most common methods for securing your connection to the HotSpot are to a security method (WPA2 PSK) and to Hide your device's SSID name.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Mobile HotSpot**).
2. Tap **Mobile HotSpot** ➔ **Configure**.
3. Tap the **Security** field and select **WPA2 PSK**.
4. With security enabled, enter a new password into the **Password** field.

Important! The more complex the password, the harder it will be for intruders to break your security. It is recommended that you not use names, birthdays, or other personal information.

5. Tap **Save** to store the new settings.

Kies Via Wi-Fi

Samsung Kies is a software that enables you to update your device firmware, synchronize files, and transfer data to and from your device directly by connecting to the PC.

Note: Some features will be supported through the System Updates feature in the future. For more information, refer to *"Software Update"* on page 246.

To learn more about Samsung Kies and Samsung applications, browse featured applications and download Kies at: http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads.

Note: Samsung Kies works on both PC and Macintosh computers.

Connecting With Samsung Kies

1. Install Samsung Kies software on your PC.

Warning! Close any running applications before connecting your device to a PC.

2. Run Samsung Kies.
3. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Kies via Wi-Fi**.

   Select the source of the Wi-Fi connection for Kies air.
4. Follow the prompts from Kies to update your device firmware.
5. Refer to Samsung Kies Help for more information.

Synchronizing with Windows Media Player

Ensure that Windows Media Player is installed on your PC.

1. Attach your device to the computer with the USB cable.

   Your computer recognizes the connection and displays the AutoPlay screen.
2. Click the option to **Sync digital media files to this device** to synchronize music files.
3. Select and drag the music files you want to the sync list and begin synchronizing.
4. When finished, exit Windows Media Player and disconnect the USB cable.

Connecting as a Mass Storage Device

You can connect your device to a PC as a removable disk and access the file directory.

1. Attach your device to the computer with the USB cable.

   Your computer recognizes the connection and displays the AutoPlay screen.

2. Click the option to Open device to view files.

   You should see a Tablet folder.

3. Copy files to or from the PC from or to the device (Tablet folder).

4. When finished, close the PC folder and disconnect the USB cable.

GPS Applications

GPS applications allow you to achieve real-time, GPS-enabled, turn-by-turn navigation and to access local searches based on a variety of category parameters.

To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage
- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows

Global GPS turn-by-turn navigation, mapping, and Point of Interest content is available for three continents, including North America (U.S., Canada, and Mexico), Western Europe, and China, where wireless coverage is available.

Important! If you tap or cover the internal GPS antenna while using GPS services, it may impede the GPS signal resulting in the GPS services not working in an optimal manner. Refer to the following diagram to locate the approximate location of the internal GPS antenna.

Section 10: Applications and Widgets

This section contains a description of each application that is available on the Apps screen, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided. Various widgets are also described.

Tip: To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently-used applications to one of the Home screens. For details, see *"App Shortcuts"* on page 41.

Update Available

When you open an application that is preloaded on your device, an **Update Available** message may be displayed if there is a new version of the app available.

- Tap **Upgrade** to update the app or tap **Not Now** to open the app without updating.

  For more information, refer to *"Updates to Downloaded Apps"* on page 189.

Alarm

Set alarms for reminders or for wake-up times.

Adding and Configuring Alarms

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Alarm**.
2. Tap **Create alarm** or tap an alarm that is already set.
3. Use the arrow symbols to enter adjust the hour, and minutes, then tap **AM** or **PM** (toggles depending on which was last selected).
4. Tap the **Alarm repeat** field and touch the number of times you want this alarm to repeat. Selections are: day blocks or **Repeat weekly**. Selected day blocks turn blue when active.
5. Slide the slider bar left or right in the **Alarm volume** field to decrease or increase the alarm volume. A sample of the volume level plays.
6. Tap the **Alarm tone** field and either select an available tone or select **Add** to use locate a sound to use as an alarm ringtone. Tap **OK** to activate the ringtone.

7. Tap the **Snooze** box to activate the feature. Tap the available fields to assign a **Duration** time (3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, or 30 minutes) and **Repeat** (1 time, 2 times, 3 times, 5 times, and 10 times).
   - **Duration** indicates the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
   - **Repeat** indicates the numbers of snooze sessions that are assigned to this alarm. How many times will the snooze silence the alarm.
8. Tap the **Smart alarm** box to activate this feature which slowly increases screen brightness and the volume of nature tones to simulate dawn breaking.
   Tap the **Interval** field to assign a interval time (3 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, or 30 minutes) and nature tone (Fairy fountain, Birdsong by the lake, The secret forest, Serenity, Gentle spring rain, and Sparkling mist).
   - **Interval** category describes the length of time the alarm will remain silent between alarm notifications (snooze time).
   - **Tone** category provides one of several nature sounds that are used as the alarm tone.
9. Tap the **Name** field and enter a name for this Alarm.
10. Tap **Done** to save the alarm.
    The main Alarm screen displays showing the new or updated alarm.

Activating Alarms

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Alarm**.
2. Tap **Turn alarm on** to activate the alarm. A gray alarm means the alarm is deactivated.
3. Tap an alarm to change any of its settings and then select **Done** to save the updates.

Deactivating and Deleting Alarms

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Alarm**.
2. Touch and hold an alarm and then tap one of the following options:
   - **Delete alarm**: Delete the alarm.

   – or –

   Tap **Delete** and select the existing alarms you want to delete, and then tap **Delete**.

Turning Off an Alarm

When the alarm sounds, to turn off the alarm:

- Touch and drag in any direction.

Setting the Snooze Feature

To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds:

- Touch and slide in any direction. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings.

AllShare Play

AllShare Play™ allows your tablet to stream photos, music, and videos from its memory to other DLNA certified™ (Digital Living Network Alliance) devices. Your tablet can also play digital content streamed from other DLNA certified devices.

Note: To view more information about DLNA certified products visit http://www.dlna.org/home.

Configuring AllShare

You must first connect both of your communicating devices to the same Wi-Fi and be using an active and registered Samsung account prior to using this application. For more information, refer to *"Turning Wi-Fi On or Off"* on page 150. Connect to Wi-Fi, configure AllShare Play settings to identify your device as a server, and set treatment of copied files.

Important! The Samsung account manages the access information (username and password) to several applications, such as AllShare Play.

1. Connect to a Wi-Fi network. For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi"* on page 150.
2. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **AllShare Play**.

Note: If prompted, read the on-screen message about network charges and tap **OK** to continue.

The AllShare Play Sign In screen displays.

3. Tap **Sign in**. The Samsung account screen displays.

4. Tap **Create new account**, if you have not set up a Samsung account, or select **Sign in**, if you have already set up a Samsung account.

   For more information, refer to *"Creating a Samsung Account"* on page 17.

   The AllShare Play main screen displays.

5. For more information, tap **Menu** ➔ **FAQ**.

Using Group Cast

While using various applications, such as **Gallery**, when you tap **Share** to share a file, you see Group Cast as an option.

Group Cast is an easy way to share files in real time with others who are on the same Wi-Fi network. Group Cast can be used when you want to share documents, images, music, and so on.

You can use Group Cast for meetings, sales presentations, conferences, and classes. All you need is a Wi-Fi network that works with Group Cast, and most do.

To share a file using Group Cast:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Gallery**.
2. Navigate to the file you want to share and touch **Share** ➔ **Group Cast**.

   For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 116.

Note: After the initial Group Cast request, tap **Group Cast** instead of **Share**.

3. Use the keyboard to enter a PIN code and tap **Done**.

   This process makes sure only desired recipients can view your shared image.

   The AllShare Play - Group Cast screen displays and the device waits for other connected recipients to accept the connection and enter the PIN on their screens.

4. Tap **OK** to start the group cast process while other users connect.

   You can now interact and draw with the on-screen image, and users will instantaneously see the same gestures and also be able to interact.

5. The newly altered image (with markups and comments) can not be saved, but you can take a screen shot of the current image and save it to your Clipboard. For more information, refer to *"Navigating Your Device"* on page 30.

Calculator

The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions to solve simple arithmetic problems and advanced operators to solve more complex problems.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Calculator**.
2. Enter the first number using the numeric keys.
3. Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the **+** (add), **-** (subtract), **×** (multiply), or **÷** (divide) key.
4. Enter the next number.
5. To view the result, tap the **=** (equals) key.
6. Repeat Steps 3 through 5 as many times as required.
7. Tap **C** to clear the result.
8. For more advanced problems, rotate your device to landscape mode and use the advanced operators **sin**, **ln**, **cos**, **log**, **tan**, and so on, just as you would on a pocket calculator.
9. Touch and hold the Calculator's display to copy or cut the contents of the display.

   Copied to clipboard displays. Paste the copied value in another app.

Calendar

Your device includes a powerful Calender to help you organize your schedules more conveniently and effectively. Learn to create and manage events and tasks, and set alarms to remind yourself of important events and tasks.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Calendar**.
2. Tap a tab to choose a calendar view:
   - **Year**: Display all twelve months of this year. Sweep across the years at the bottom of the screen to display another year.
   - **Month**: Display the current month. Tap a month and year at the bottom of the screen to display another month.
   - **Week**: Display the current week. Tap a week at the bottom of the screen to display another week.
   - **Day**: Display today's schedule by hour. Tap day at the bottom of the screen to display another day.

- **List**: Display only event and task names and dates for a selected year. Tap a year at the bottom of the screen to display another year. Tap a date to hide or show the event or task name.
- **Task**: Display your list of tasks. Tap the sort field to change how your tasks are sorted. Tasks can be sorted by due date, priority, date, week, month, or group.

3. Swipe left or right across the screen to view other days or other weeks. Swipe up or down the screen to view other events.
4. To find an event or task, tap **Search**.

   Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a search term. Possible events display as you type.

   Tap an event to send, edit, or delete the event.
5. Tap **Add event / Add task** and then tap **Done** to add a new event to your calendar. For more information, refer to *"Creating an Event or Task"* on page 168.
6. Tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Zoom in**: In the Week and Day views, increase the size of the area being viewed.
   - **Zoom out**: In the Week and Day views, decrease the size of the area being viewed.
   - **Go to**: Use the Set date pop-up to enter a date and then tap Set to display that date on your calendar.
   - **Delete**: Delete events for the year, month, week, day, week, month, before today, or all events, depending on the Calendar view.
   - **Sync**: Manually synchronizes the calendar entries among all of your current accounts, for example, Gmail, Exchange, and so on.
   - **Show controls** / **Hide controls**: Show or hide a small month calendar and a list of events in landscape mode.
   - **Settings**: Customize the calendar. For more information, refer to *"Calendar Settings"* on page 169.
7. Tap **Today** to return to the current date.
8. Tap **Calendars** to configure which events to display. Tap **Add account** ➔ **Add account** to add additional accounts from which calendar events can be synced.

Creating an Event or Task

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Calendar**.
2. Double-tap the date for which you want to enter an all day event or task.
   - Tap the **Add event** or **Add task** tab.
   - Tap the **My calendar** field and tap a calendar to which the even or task should be added.
   - Use the keyboard to enter the event or task name.

   – or –

   Tap the date for which you want to enter an event or task.
   - Tap .
   - Tap the **Add event** or **Add task** tab.
   - Enter the event or task information.
3. Tap **Save**.

Managing Events

You can delete, send, and edit events on your mobile device:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Calendar**.
2. Tap an event. A pop-up displays event information.
3. Tap **Options**. Choose from: Reply, Reply all, Forward or Share via.
4. Tap **Delete** and then tap **OK** to delete the event.

   – or –

   Tap **Edit** to update the event details.
5. Tap **Share via** and then select **Bluetooth**, **Email**, **Messaging**, or **Wi-Fi Direct** to share the event.

Add Additional Calendar Accounts

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Calendar** ➔ **Calendars** ➔ **Add account**.

   – or –

   From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.

   The Accounts and sync screen displays.
2. Tap **Add account** to display the Add account option.
3. Select an account type and enter your account information.

Calendar Settings

To set up Calendar preferences:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Calendar**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings**.

   The following options display:

   View settings

   - **First day of week**: Choose a day to begin each week.
   - **Hide declined events**: Enable or disable display of events.
   - **Lock time zone**: Allows you to lock event times and dates based on your selected time zone, which is defined by the following field.
   - **Select time zone**: If **Lock time zone** is enabled, used this option to select a time zone to lock event times and dates.
   - **Show week number**: Show the week number to the left of each week in the Month view.
   - **Calendars**: Enable calendars for your various accounts.

   Event notification

   - **Set alerts & notifications**: Tap to select, which allows you to set the Alert, Status bar notification, or Off.
   - **Select ringtone**: Choose a tone for calendar notifications.
   - **Default reminder time**: Set the default time for a notification before an event is to occur.
   - **Notifications while screen is off**: Enable or disable the display of notifications on the full screen while the screen is turned off.

Sync settings

- **Sync events/tasks**: Displays the General sync settings. For more information, refer to *"Accounts and Synchronization"* on page 222.

(Accounts): Tap an account and then tap the check box to enable or disable the calendar sync for that account.

Camera

Take photos and record video with your device's built in Camera.

For more information, refer to *"Camera"* on page 102.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Camera**.

Contacts

Store contact information for your friends, family and colleagues, to quickly access information or to send a message. For more information, refer to *"Contacts"* on page 66.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Contacts**.

Downloads

Files, apps, and other items you download in Internet, Gmail, Email, or in other ways, are stored on your tablet's internal storage. Use the Downloads app to view, reopen, or delete what you have downloaded.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Downloads**.
2. Tap an item to open it.
3. Tap headings for earlier downloads to view them.
4. Tap items you want to send, to check them, and then tap **Share via**. Select an option to share the item. Options are: Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Google Cast, Messaging, Photo editor, Picasa, or Wi-Fi Direct.
5. Tap items you want to delete, to check them, and then tap **Delete**. The items are deleted from your tablet.
6. Tap **Sort by size** or **Sort by date**, at the bottom of the Downloads pop-up, to switch back and forth.

Email

Send and receive email using popular email services.

For more information, refer to *"Email"* on page 88.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Email.

Gallery

Use Gallery to view, capture, and manage photos and videos.

For more information, refer to *"Gallery"* on page 116.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.

Game Base

The T-Mobile Game Base provides access to a game rental and purchase services for compatible T-Mobile Android devices.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ (**Game Base**).
2. Tap an available category and follow the on-screen instructions.

Gmail

Send and receive email with Gmail, Google's web-based email. For more information, refer to *"Gmail"* on page 84.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.

Google+

Share updates and see what is going on around you with Google+ for mobile.

For more information, refer to *"Google+"* on page 141.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Google+.

Internet

Your device includes a full HTML browser, to access the internet. For more information, refer to *"Internet"* on page 141.

Tip: A shortcut to Internet displays on the main Home screen by default.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.

Latitude

With Google Latitude, you can see the location of all of your friends on a map or on a list. You can also share or hide your location.

You must first set up your tablet to use wireless networks to help pinpoint your location. Also, Latitude works best when Wi-Fi is enabled.

To enable Wi-Fi:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.
2. Tap **Location services** ➔ **Use wireless networks**.
   A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
3. Tap **Location services** ➔ **Use GPS satellites**.
   A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
4. Tap **Location services** ➔ **Location and Google search**.
   A green check mark indicates the feature is enabled.
5. Under **Wireless and network**, on the Wi-Fi tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Wi-Fi on.
   For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi"* on page 150.
6. Log on to your Google account.
   To create a Google account or set up your Google account on your device use **Accounts and sync** settings. For more information, refer to *"Accounts and Synchronization"* on page 222.
7. Tap **Home** ➔ **Apps** ➔ **Latitude**.
   Your location is displayed on the map, accurate to 30 meters.

Sharing Your Location with Friends

1. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Latitude**.
2. From the Latitude map screen, tap Latitude to display your Latitude list of friends. At first, only your name is displayed.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Add friends**.
4. Tap **Select from Contacts** and select a contact
   – or –
   Tap **Add via email address**, enter an email address, and tap the **Send** key or close the keyboard and tap **Add friends**.
5. At the **Send sharing requests** prompt, tap **Yes**.

Your friend will receive an email or text message with your location marked on a map. They will also receive instructions on how to view your location from the Internet or use Latitude on their device, if it is available. Once they acknowledge your request, their location will display on your tablet. They can share their location from their computer, device, or tablet.

For more information, go to http://www.google.com/latitude.

Latitude Menu

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Latitude**.
2. Tap Latitude, if necessary.
3. From the top-right select any of the following functions:
   - **My Location** Uses GPS technology to determine your current location.
   - **Local** Launch the Local app. For more information, refer to *"Local"* on page 174. This option only displays in portrait mode.
   - **Directions** Allows you to enter a start and end point for directions.
   - **Layers**: Enable or disable a map layer to display. Choose from Traffic, Satellite, Terrain, Transit Lines, Latitude, My Maps, Bicycling, or Wikipedia. This option only displays in portrait mode.

– or –

Tap **Menu** for these options:

- **Add friends**: Share your location with friends. For more information, refer to *"Sharing Your Location with Friends"* on page 172.
- **Check in**: Tap a location to check-in so others will know your location.
- **Refresh friends**: Update your Latitude list of friends.
- **Show stale friends / Hide stale friends**: Show or hide friends depending on the accuracy of their Latitude information.
- **Location settings**: Configures the location reporting settings. For more information, refer to *"Maps Menu"* on page 176.
- **Clear Map**: Remove search results from the map.
- **Make available offline**: Makes the current map functionality available even no network connection is available.
- **Join Latitude/Latitude**: Join Latitude, to share your location with friends you choose and Google.

- **My Places**: Displays a list of Starred places.
- **Offers**: Displays nearby local offers based on your current location.
- **Settings**: Configure settings. For more information, refer to *"Maps Settings"* on page 178.
- **Help**: Launches Google mobile Help.

Local

Local (formerly known as Google Places) displays company logos on a layer of Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Local**.
2. Tap **Search** and then use the **Search Maps** field to manually enter a desired place or choose from among the various categories. Matches are filtered by those closest to your current location.
3. Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, [user added searches], RECOMMENDATIONS, or IN THIS AREA a list of places within this category displays.
4. Tap the Maps icon to launch the related maps feature.

   – or –

   Tap **Menu** and then tap either **My Places** ➔ **Starred**.

   – or –

   Tap the Maps icon (upper-right) to launch the related maps feature.

   - Tap **Menu** ➔ **Latitude**. The functions of this application are similar to those of the Navigation application, but work along with the Latitude service where you can share your location with your chosen Google friends.

Lookout Security

Lookout™ provides mobile device-specific security features that are coupled with a minimal performance hit. Lookout Mobile Security provides key security options that are unique to the mobile market. Along with the antivirus and anti-malware tech, there's a lost and stolen device locator service, an application privacy adviser, and a backup service.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Lookout Security**).
2. Read the on-screen descriptions and tap **Get started** to begin your configuration.
3. Read the on-screen information about Security and if desired, tap the **Enable Security** field to activate the feature.
4. Tap **Next**.
5. Read the on-screen information about Backup and if desired, tap the **Enable Backup** field to activate the feature.
6. Tap **Next**.
7. Read the on-screen information about the feature that can help locate your missing device and if desired, tap **New user** (to setup a new account) or **Existing user** (to log into your account field to activate the feature).
8. Tap **Start Lookout**.

From the main application, the main features are presented as buttons. Tap one to reveal a button that will run the feature.

Maps

Use Google Maps to find your current location, get directions, and other location-based information.

Tip: A shortcut to Maps displays on the main Home screen by default.

Note: You must enable location services to use Maps. Some features require Standalone or Google location services. For more information, refer to *"Location Services"* on page 224.

- From the Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Maps**.

Navigating the Map

Zooming

- Double-tap on the screen to zoom in.
- Use two fingers, such as your index finger and thumb, to zoom out by making an inward pinch motion on the screen. To zoom in, make an outward motion by sweeping your fingers out.

Tip: For convenient browsing, you can rotate the device to landscape mode.

Scrolling

- Touch and drag on the screen to reposition the map in the display.

Tap

- Tap an icon on the map to display information about the location. For example, your location is indicated by a flashing and a pop-up that displays your name.

Maps Menu

1. From the Home screen, tap **Maps**.
2. From the top-right select any of the following functions: My Location, Local, Directions, and Layers. For more information, refer to *"Other Map Options"* on page 177.

   – or –

   While viewing a map, tap **Menu** for these options:

   - **Clear Map**: Remove search results from the map.
   - **Make available offline**: Makes the current map functionality available even no network connection is available.

- **Join Latitude/Latitude**: Join Latitude, to share your location with friends you choose and Google.
- **My Places**: Display starred locations.
- **Offers**: Displays nearby local offers based on your current location.
- **Settings**: Configure settings. For more information, refer to *"Maps Settings"* on page 178.
- **Help**: Learn about Google maps.

Tip: Local and Layers display in the Application Bar in landscape mode.

Other Map Options

Tap the indicated icon to use these additional Map options:

Search Maps: Use the keyboard to enter your request to Search the map for a city, location, and so on. Suggestions are displayed as you type.

Speak: Just speak a city, location, and so on, to display.

Compass: Set the map to always display north at the top of the screen or to automatically rotate like a compass, keeping north on the map facing north, and so on. Your device may have to be calibrated the first time you use this feature. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Local: Launch the Local app. For more information, refer to *"Local"* on page 174.

Directions: Displays the Directions pop-up. Enter **My Location** and **End point** or tap the button to the right of the fields to choose your current location, a contact's location, or to tap a point on the map.

- Tap the automobile, bus, bicycle, or walking icon for the appropriate directions. Then tap **Go** to display a list of directions.
- Tap the Directions list and scroll up or down. Tap an entry in the Directions list to show the point mentioned on the map.

Layers: Enable or disable a map layer to display. Choose from Traffic, Satellite, Terrain, Transit Lines, Latitude, My Maps, Bicycling, or Wikipedia.

Maps Settings

Use the Maps settings to customize your Maps application.

1. From the Home screen, tap **Maps**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Settings** to set the following Maps options:
   - **Display**: Set the following Maps display options:
     - **Zoom Buttons**: If enabled, the zoom in (**+**) and zoom out (**-**) buttons are displayed on the map.
     - **Scale Bar**: If enabled, the scale bar is displayed on the map, which shows the scale of the map in feet and meters.
     - **Bubble action**: If enabled, the "Get directions" button appears within on-screen bubbles.
   - **Offline and cache**
     - **Automatic caching**: If enabled, automatic caching occurs while charging and using either Wi-Fi or mobile networks.
     - **Clear all map tiles**: Tap **OK** to clear map tile cache.
   - **Location settings**: These settings display if you have joined Latitude.
     - **Location reporting**: To update your location automatically, set the following options:
       - **Detect your location**: Enable or disable whether your location is updated automatically.
       - **Set your location**: Set your location manually.
       - **Do not update your location**: Your friends cannot see your automatic location.
     - **Report from this device**: Allows you to automatically update your location from this device.
     - **Enable location sharing**: Allows you to share your location with people you know.
     - **Manage your friends**: Add or remove friends who can see your location.
     - **Enable location history**: This history is only seen by you.
     - **Sign out of Latitude**: Signs you out of Latitude and launches the Maps application.
     - **Automatic check-ins**: Checks you in to places that you have designated.
     - **Check-in notifications**: Enables notifications that suggest places to check in.

– **Manage your places**: View and modify your automatic check-ins and muted places.

- **Labs**: Access experimental features.
- **What's New**: Link to Google Play Store where you can check for a Maps update.
- **About**: View information about Maps.
- **Feedback**: Display a Maps feedback form.
- **Terms, Privacy & Notices**: View information about Google Maps, including the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, Legal Notices, and Web History.

Media Hub

Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content.

For more information, refer to *"Media Hub"* on page 122.

Tip: A shortcut to Media Hub displays on the main Home screen by default.

Note: Media Hub service requires a Media Hub account and depends on service availability.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Media Hub**.

Memo

Create and manage text memos and use Bluetooth to send memos to paired Bluetooth devices.

Composing a Memo

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Memo**.
2. Tap **New memo**, compose the memo, then select **Done** to save.

For more information, refer to *"Entering Text"* on page 55.

Memo List Options

To access options while viewing the list of Memos:

1. Tap **List** to view your memos in a list mode. Tap an entry in the list on the left to view the memo on the right of the screen.
2. To delete one or more memos, tap **Delete**, select one or all memos, and tap **Delete**.
3. Tap **Menu** for the following options:
   - **Sort by**: Set whether to sort the memo list by **Date**, **Title**, or **Color**.
   - **Share via**: Select one or all memos, tap **Share**, and then tap **Bluetooth**, **Email**, **Gmail**, **Messaging,** or **Wi-Fi Direct** to send memos to another device or another person.
   - **Print**: Select one or all memos, tap **Print**, and send the memos to a Samsung printer.
   - **Sync memo**: Sign in to Google and use Google docs to back up your memos.
   - **PIN lock**: Set a PIN number to use to lock your memos.
   - **Font size**: Set the text font size. Options are: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, and Huge.
4. Touch and hold a memo thumbnail or list entry to display the following options:
   - **Delete**: Delete the selected memo.
   - **Lock/Unlock**: Lock the memo or use your PIN number to remove the lock form the memo. Once you lock a memo, you have to use your PIN number to view the memo.
   - **Share via**: Tap **Bluetooth**, **Email**, **Gmail, Messaging,** or **Wi-Fi Direct** to send the memo by the selected method. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Memo Options

While viewing a Memo:

- Tap **Memo options** for the following options:

Delete: Delete this Memo.

Color: Choose a color for this memo.

Lock/Unlock: Lock the memo or use your PIN number to remove the lock form the memo. Once you lock a memo, you have to use your PIN number to view the memo.

Print: Send this memo to a Samsung printer.

Share via: Tap **Bluetooth**, **Email**, **Gmail, Messaging,** or **Wi-Fi Direct** to send the memo by the selected method. For more information, refer to *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Messaging

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messaging**.
2. Follow the on-screen prompts.

For more information, refer to *"Messaging"* on page 76.

Messenger

With Google Messenger, you can bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation.

For more information, refer to *"Messenger"* on page 101.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Messenger**.

Mobile HotSpot

Provides access to the Tethering and Mobile HotSpot menu where you can use either the USB tethering or Mobile HotSpot functionality.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Mobile HotSpot**).
2. Activate the desired connection method.

For more information see either *"USB Tethering"on page 157* or *"Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot"on page 158*.

More for Me

Provides customized offers, discounts and deals right to your device by providing some brief customer and location information. The application uses your current location to bring you the best deals in your area.

Initial Setup

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**More for Me**).
2. Read the on-screen information and configure the necessary options such as: Gender, Age, and agreements.
3. Tap **Continue** to complete the setup process.

Using the More for Me Application

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**More for Me**).
2. From the upper-right, tap the button to access an available tab for more options:
   - **What's Hot**: displays a listing of current hot offers in your area.
   - **Great Apps**: Provides you with current Daily Deals & Shopping applications.
   - **All Deals**: Provides you with current Top Deals & Discounts.

Music Player

Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

For more information, refer to *"Music Player"* on page 133.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.

My Files

Find, view, and manage folders and files, such as music files, photo files, video files, and so on, stored on your tablet. If the file is associated with an application on your device, you can launch the file in the application.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **My Files**.
2. Tap a folder and scroll down or up until you locate a file.

Note: You may have to tap one or more subfolders before you encounter files.

3. Tap a file to launch it in the associated application, if the file is associated with an application.

4. While browsing files, use these controls:

Up: Display a higher directory.

Search: Use the keyboard to enter a search term. The current folder is searched and results are displayed. Tap **X** to remove the search field.

Display mode: Enable or disable thumbnails for each file.

Root: Display the root directory.

Add Folder: Add a new folder in the current folder.

Mark files: Tap the box to the left of each file or next to the folder to select all files in the folder. Then tap send, copy, cut, or delete in the Application bar.

5. To view a photo file:
   - Tap the file.

   The Gallery app is used to open the photo.
   For more information, refer to *"Viewing Photos and Videos"* on page 117.
6. To view a video file:
   - Tap the file.

   The Video player is launched and plays the video.
   For more information, refer to *"Video Player"* on page 113.

Navigation

Use Google Navigation to find a destination and to get walking or driving directions.

Note: You must first create a Wi-Fi connection to use Navigation.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Navigation**.
2. Tap **Accept** to accept the Google Maps Navigation beta message.
3. Tap in the Application bar and then tap either **Driving** or **Walking** to describe the type of directions you want.
4. Tap **Map** in the Application bar to see a map (Driving) or a satellite image (Walking) of your area.
5. Tap **Menu** for the following options:
   - **Route options**: Set whether directions should **Avoid highways** and **Avoid tolls**.
   - **Settings**: Display Navigation settings:
     - **Screen dimming**: Enable or disable screen dimming, which lets the screen dim between instructions to save power.
     - **Terms, privacy & notices**: View Google's Terms and conditions, Privacy policy, and Legal notices.
   - **Help**: Display Navigation help information.
6. To find a destination, tap an option:
   - **Speak destination**: Say the name or address of your destination.
   - **Type destination**: Enter the destination.
   - **Contacts**: Choose a destination from a contact record.
   - **Starred places**: Choose destinations you have marked as favorites.
   - **Recent destinations**: Choose from recent destinations. This option is not available until a destination has been requested.

7. While navigating, tap:

ROUTE AND ALTERNATES: View information about the current route and alternate routes.

Directions List: View directions in a step-by-step list.

SHOW MAP: Return to the map view after viewing ROUTE AND ALTERNATES or the directions list.

Layers: Choose map layers to display.

Menu: To display these options:

- **Turn off voice/Turn on voice**: Enable or disable voice-guided prompts.
- **Exit navigation**: Close Navigation and discard route information.
- **Search**: Find a location.
- **Set destination**: Choose or enter a destination.
- **Settings**: Enable or disable screen dimming and view Google's Terms and conditions, Privacy policy, and Legal notices.
- **Help**: Display Navigation help information.

Photo Editor

To perfect any photos stored on your tablet, use Photo editor to crop, rotate, resize, adjust color and contrast, and much more.

For more information, refer to *"Photo Editor"* on page 121.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Photo editor**.

Play Books

Use the Play Books app to read eBooks from the Internet-based Google Play™ Books service. Google eBooks is a new way to discover, buy, and enjoy your favorite books online and offline.

You can read books online or mark them for availability offline, so you can read them when you have no Internet connection (such as on an airplane). You can also use Books as your starting point for browsing or searching for books on line.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Books**.

   The Google Play Books main screen displays.

Note: You may be asked to create or sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to *"Setting Up Your Gmail Account"* on page 84.

2. To add more books to your library, tap **SHOP** in the Application bar.

   A pop-up displays a link to the Google Play Terms of Service. Read the document and tap **Accept**.

   Browse the selection of Google eBooks, which are arranged in categories like Featured, Top Selling, Top Rated, Top Free, and many more.

3. To find a book by title or author name, tap **Search** on the Play Books main screen or tap **SHOP** ➔ **Search**.

4. On the Play Books main screen, tap **Menu** for these options:

   - **Make available offline**: Mark books to make them available offline. Tap below a book cover to mark it with a pin and then tap . Just reverse this process to remove books from your device.
   - **View as list / View as carousel**: Set how you want to view your books.
   - **Refresh**: If a book in your library does not appear on your device, use this option to update the display.
   - **Accounts**: Set the account to use.
   - **Settings**: Provides access to the application's settings.
   - **Help**: Displays various Book help information. Tap **Help Center** to get additional Google Play Books information.

5. Tap the cover of a book to start reading.

Reading a Book

Once the book displays:

1. Sweep across the screen to turn the page.
2. Tap the screen to display or hide the following options.
3. Tap for a table of contents.
4. Tap Aa to set THEME (day or night), BRIGHTNESS, TYPEFACE, FONT SIZE, TEXT ALIGNMENT, and LINE HEIGHT.
5. Tap **Search** on the Play Books main screen or tap **SHOP** ➔ **Search**.
6. Tap **Menu** for these additional in-book options:
   - **Original pages** / **Flowing text**: Display the pages of the book in their original format or use your format settings.
   - **About the book**: Displays the Google Play description of the book.
   - **Share**: Share the book by using Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - **Keep on device**: Tap the check box to make the book available offline.
   - **Add bookmark**: Adds a bookmark to the current page.
   - **Read aloud / Stop reading aloud**: Tap to let your device read the book to you.
   - **Settings**: Provides access to the application's settings.
   - **Help**: Tap **Help center**, **Contact us**, or **Report a problem** to link the appropriate website. Tap **Terms of Service**, **Privacy Policy**, or **Open source licenses** to read those documents. The Play Books version number is also displayed.
7. Touch and drag the slider at the bottom of the page to display a different page, which is indicated by the pop-up.
8. To contact customer support, report an issue, and display more Google eBooks information, from a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Books** ➔ **Menu** ➔ **Help**.

Play Magazines

With Google Play Magazines, you can subscribe to your favorite magazines and have them available to read on your device at any time or any place.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Play Magazines**).
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so.
3. At the Welcome! display, tap the shop icon to browse the full catalog.
4. Read the Google Play Terms of Service and tap **Accept**.
5. Sweep the screen to the left or right to view Categories, Featured, Top Selling, and New Arrivals.
6. Tap a magazine to see more information and subscribe.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions to subscribe to a magazine.

Play Movies & TV

The Play Movies app is a new application for select Android devices. Any movie you rent from the Google Play™ Store can be downloaded for offline viewing through this application. In addition, the Play Movies app can be used to stream your Google Play™ movie rentals as well as play any of your personal videos stored on your tablet.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Movies & TV**.

For more information tap **Menu** ➔ **Help**.

Play Music

Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer. For more information, refer to *"Play Music"* on page 125.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Music**.

Play Store

Google Play Store provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your device. It also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your device.

Tip: A shortcut to Play Store displays on the main Home screen by default.

1. From the Home screen, tap **Play Store**.

   – or –

   From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Play Store**.

   If you are not already logged in with your Google account, the Add a Google Account screen displays.

   - Tap **Existing**, if you already have a Google account, or **New** to create a Google account.

     For more information, refer to *"Setting Up Your Gmail Account"* on page 84.
2. The first time you open Play Store, read the Google Play™ Terms of Service and then tap **Accept** to continue.
3. To browse for items to install, tap **Apps**, **Games**, **Music**, **Books**, or **Movies**. Tap a tab, such as CATEGORIES, FEATURED, TOP PAID, or TOP FREE to refine your search.
4. To get help for using Google Play™, tap **Menu** ➔ **Help**.

Updates to Downloaded Apps

You can check for new versions of applications by visiting the Google Play Store. Items that have a new version available will say **Update**.

You can also select apps that you would like to be updated automatically. To do this:

1. From the Home screen, tap **Play Store**.
2. Tap **Installed Apps**.
3. Select the **INSTALLED** tab to list the Play Store apps installed on your device.

   Update is displayed if there is an update available for the app.
4. Tap an app and then select **Allow automatic updating** to enable automatic updating.
5. Tap **Open** to open the app on your device.

6. Tap **Update** to update the app on your device.

Managing Downloads

Files, apps, and other items you download in Internet, Gmail, Email, or in other ways, are stored on your tablet's internal storage. You can use the Downloads app to view, reopen, or delete what you have downloaded.

To manage the demands on their networks or to help you avoid unexpected charges, some mobile networks place restrictions on the size of the files you can download. When you are connected to such networks, and you try to download an oversized-file, you are asked or required to delay downloading the file until the next time you are connected to a Wi-Fi network. At that time, the download resumes automatically. The Downloads app can also be used to view and manage these queued files.

Downloaded files are stored in the Download directory in your tablet's internal storage. You can view and copy files from this directory when connected to a computer with a USB cable.

Uninstalling an App

Apps come pre-installed on your device and you can download additional apps from Google Play. If you decide to, you can uninstall apps you downloaded from Google Play and other sources.

There are several ways to uninstall an app:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Downloaded** tab.
3. Tap the app you want to uninstall.
4. Tap the **Uninstall** button.

   A pop-up displays the message **This application will be uninstalled**.
5. Tap **OK** to confirm you want to uninstall the app.

You can also use Google Play to uninstall apps you downloaded from there (see *"Play Store"* on page 189).

To uninstall an app from the Apps screen:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Downloaded applications**.
   The Downloaded applications screen displays.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Uninstall**. A appears on Apps that can be uninstalled.
4. Tap an app's icon and then tap **OK** to uninstall and remove the app from your tablet.

Note: You cannot uninstall the apps that are included with Android. You can only uninstall the apps you have downloaded.

Polaris Office

Polaris Office Mobile for Android is a Microsoft Office compatible office suite. This application provides a central place for managing your documents online or offline.

The application can also open Adobe PDF (Portable Document Format) files.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Polaris Office**).
2. From the Registration screen, tap **Skip** to begin using the application without registration.
   – or –
   Enter your email address and tap **Register** to use the currently indicated email address for registration purposes.

3. On its initial launch, navigate the application to begin use:
   - **New**: creates a new office document.
   - **Recent documents**: provides a scrollable list of recently accessed documents.
   - **Browser**: allows you to search on your device and SD card for compatible documents.
   - **Clouds**: provides access to documents stored on your configured Cloud storage location.
   - **Form type**: allows you to quickly access your documents based on file type. Each type is separated into several available tabs located at the bottom of the screen, such as: Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Other, and PDF.
   - **Favorites**: allows you to list only those documents tagged as Favorite.

Pro Apps

Provides access to compatible productivity tools. These productivity packs can be accessed from anywhere.

Note: Access to these applications and packs requires you have an active Google account and are logged in prior to connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Pro Apps**.
2. Select an application and follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.

S Suggest

Provides on-screen recommendations for applications that are specifically supported and made for use on your device.

Note: Access to this feature requires that you already be logged in to your Samsung account application.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**S Suggest**).
2. Read the terms and conditions.
3. Place a checkmark in the **Agree** field then tap **Agree**.
4. Select an application from one of the available categories (Picks, Categories, Games, Friends, and Info).

Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.

Samsung Apps

Allows you to easily download an abundance of applications to your device. This includes games, news, reference, social networking, navigation, and more. Samsung Apps makes your Smartphone smarter.

Note: Access to this feature requires that you already be logged in to your Samsung account application.

1. From the Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Samsung Apps**).
2. If prompted, read the on-screen disclaimer and agree to the information.

Follow the on-screen instructions.

Search

Search the Web using the Google™ search engine.

1. From the Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Search**.
2. Use the keyboard to enter search criteria to display matching searches.

   – or –

   Tap and speak the search criteria slowly and clearly. Google searches for the information and displays results.

   Suggestions display below the text entry area.
3. Tap a suggestion to search for that term. A browser window displays the search results.

Settings

Configure your device to your preferences.

For more information, refer to *"Settings"* on page 202.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.

Slacker Radio

Slacker offers free, internet radio for mobile devices.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Slacker Radio**.

Important! You must register and create a free account prior to using this service.

2. Read the on-screen legal disclaimer and tap **OK**.
3. If prompted, enter your Email address and password.

   – or –

   Tap **Create Account** if you have not created an account.

Begin selecting the music you want to listen to by selecting from the available on-screen categories.

Smart Remote

Allows you to locate programming, watch it on your tv, and then control your entertainment system with gestures from the device.

For more information, go to: http://www.peel.com.

Discover and control TV programming right from your device. Lose your remotes, once and for all. Quit scrolling those tiresome grid guides. See what you want, right at your own fingertips: your shows, your controls, your friends.

Peel suggests Top Pick TV shows for you based on what you watch and like. Instead of a long, boring channel grid, Peel presents an easy-to-use mosaic of your favorite shows, filtered by type and genre in the order you like.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Smart Remote**).
2. Read the disclaimer and tap **Agree**.
3. Select a country location by tapping either **US & Canada** or **International.**
4. Read the on-screen information to complete your set up.

T-Mobile My Account

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

Note: Wi-Fi connection must be disabled prior to use, this application requires use of a T-Mobile network connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Access T-Mobile**).
2. If prompted, follow the on-screen information for what's new in the app.

Note: Some features may require you to log into your account.

3. The application screen provides several available options:
   - **Account Info** provides access to account-specific features such as: Notifications.
   - **Device Support** provides details about your current billing summary.

- **Notifications** provides about both your current plan, other available plans and other related services.
- **MobileLife Family Organizer** provides links to other T-Mobile related information.

T-Mobile TV

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**T-Mobile TV**).

For more information, refer to *"T-Mobile TV"* on page 140.

Talk

Use Google Talk to chat with other Google Talk users.

For more information, refer to *"Google Talk"* on page 97.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Talk**.

Video Maker

Video Maker lets you custom-make your own videos. You can add themes, music, pictures, and other videos to your video.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Video Maker**.
2. Tap **New Project**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Video Player

View and manage videos stored on your tablet.

For more information, refer to *"Video Player"* on page 113.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Video Player**.

VPN Client

This is a full-featured VPN Client that provides support for the latest IPSec VPN standards and provides interoperability with support for all major VPN Gateways.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**VPN CLient**).
2. Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the VPN Client.

World Clock

View the date and time in any time zone.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **World Clock**.

   A map of the world displays with the locations you have added flagged.

2. Tap **Add** to add a city to display.

   A list of world cities displays in landscape mode.

3. Scroll through the list and tap the city you want to add.

Tip: Tap the first letter of the city's name, to the right of the list, to find the city more quickly.

– or –

In portrait or landscape mode, tap and turn the globe to locate a city and tap the city you want to add.

A pop-up displays the city name, the current time and date there, and the GMT offset.

4. Tap and from the pop-up, tap the city and select **Add city**.
5. Tap **Reorder** to change the order of the cities. Tap the grid on an entry and drag the entry to a new position in the list. Tap **Done** to change the order.
6. Tap **Remove** to delete entries. Tap the box to check the cities you want to delete (a green check mark displays), then tap **Remove**.
7. Touch and hold an entry to remove it or to set the **DST settings**, which enable or disable Daylight Savings Time adjustments.

Yahoo! Finance

Stay on top of the markets with the Yahoo! Finance app for Android devices. Get real-time quotes, follow the market, or check out a particular stock. View headline news, top stories, and videos from Tech Ticker. Yahoo! Finance lets you keep up with the market movers from your Android device.

To add the Yahoo! Finance widget to a Home screen, see *"Adding Widgets to a Home screen"* on page 38.

Adding Your First Stock

To add your first stock:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Widgets**.
2. Touch and drag the **Yahoo! Finance** widget onto an available area of the screen.

   The Yahoo! Finance main screen displays with Samsung and Yahoo stocks listed by default.
3. Tap the widget and from the full application, tap **Add**.
4. Type in a stock name and select an entry in the list of stocks that is displayed.
5. The Yahoo! Finance widget displays with information about the stock just added.

Managing Stocks

Once you add a stock, there are additional Yahoo! Finance options you can use to add more stocks and set up how they are displayed and refreshed.

1. From a Home screen, tap an entry in the Yahoo! Finance widget.

   Information about the stock displays.
2. Tap **Refresh** to update the information.
3. Tap Add to add another stock. For more information, refer to *"Adding Your First Stock"* on page 198.
4. Tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Delete**: Tap to delete the stock being displayed.
   - **Change order**: Displays your stocks list. Tap and drag stocks to change the order in which they are displayed.
   - **Search**: Tap to search for a new stock.
   - **Settings**: Displays the following option:

– **Auto refresh**: Choose a time interval for automatic refreshing of stock information. The choices are: None, Every 30 minutes, Every 1 hour, and Every 3 hours. When the setting is None, tap the refresh icon on the Yahoo! Finance widget to update stock information.

5. Under the **My Stocks** tab, tap a stock entry to display the full stock information screen.
6. Tap the **Major indices** tab to display a summary of the performance of major groupings of stocks, classified by the exchange on which they trade.
7. Tap the **Currencies** tab to display the currency exchange rate for various currencies.

Additional Options

There are more options available from the full stock information screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap the **Yahoo! Finance** widget. The full stock information screen for one of your stocks displays.
2. If you have added more than one stock, tap a heading bar to display the full stock information screen for the stock.
3. Near the center of the screen, tap **1d** (1 day), **5d** (5 days), **1m** (1 month), **3m** (3 months), **6m** (6 months), or **1y** (1 year) to view a stock performance graph for the requested period.
4. At the bottom, right of the screen, tap **Y! More Information** to link to the Yahoo! Finance website.
5. At the bottom of the screen, tap **Quotes delayed** to read about real-time exchange quotes and access other Yahoo! Finance online options, such as Top Stories and a currency converter.

YouTube

View and upload YouTube videos right from your device.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **YouTube**.
2. Tap the **HOME** tab to return to the main YouTube page.
3. Tap the **BROWSE** tab to browse videos by categories like Comedy, Education, Music, and so on. Tap the desired category to display video thumbnails.
4. Tap the **ACCOUNT** tab to choose which Google account you would like to use or add an account. Once you are signed in, tap **ACCOUNT** to display your subscriptions, see your favorites, see you watch later list, manage your playlists, or upload a video.
5. Tap **Search YouTube** and use the keyboard to enter a keyword or phrase to find a YouTube video.
6. While browsing, tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Sign in / Sign out**: Sign in, sign out, or add an account. You may have to sign in to use certain options.
   - **Settings**: Configure display and search settings and view information about the application.
   - **Help**: Display YouTube help information.
   - **Feedback**: Display a YouTube feedback form.
7. Tap a video thumbnail to view the video.

Options While Viewing a Video

Use these options while viewing a video:

1. Tap **Add to** and select an available account. THis lets you add the video to your watch later list or your favorites, or add a new playlist.
2. Tap **Share** (in landscape mode) or tap **Menu** ➔ **Share** (in portrait mode) to use Google+, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Google+, Bluetooth, Gmail, or Email to send the video's URL.
3. Tap **Menu** for these options:
   - **Add YouTube TV**: Adds the current selection to your YouTube TV channel listing.
   - **Copy URL**: Copy the URL of the video to the clipboard. For more information, refer to *"Copying Fields or Text"* on page 144.
   - **Flag**: Flag the video for YouTube review.
   - **Settings**: Configure display and search settings and view information about the application.
   - **Help**: Display YouTube help information.
   - **Feedback**: Display a YouTube feedback form.

Zinio

Launches a digital magazine reader. Zinio has transformed your favorite print magazines into digital format.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ (**Zinio**).
2. Tap **Sign in** if you already have an account or tap **Join Zinio** to continue.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Section 11: Settings

This section explains Settings for customizing your device.

Accessing Settings

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**.

  – or –

  From any screen, tap the Time in the System Bar, then tap **Settings**. For more information, refer to *"Quick Settings"* on page 33.

  The Settings screen displays.

The Settings Screen

The Settings screen has tabs on the left side of the screen. Information related to the tabs displays on the right side of the screen. There are four major groups of settings: Wireless and network, Device, Personal, and System.

Wireless and Network

Control your device's wireless connections.

Wi-Fi

Your device supports Wi-Fi a/b/g/n. Use Wi-Fi settings to manage your device's Wi-Fi connections.

For more information about using your device's Wi-Fi features, see *"Wi-Fi"* on page 150.

Turning Wi-Fi On or Off

When you turn Wi-Fi service on, your device automatically searches for available, in-range Wireless Access Points (WAPs).

- From any Home screen, tap the time, then tap **Wi-Fi** from the Quick Settings menu.

  For more information, refer to *"Quick Settings"* on page 33.

  – or –

  From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**. On the Wi-Fi tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Wi-Fi on or off.

Add Wi-Fi Network

To open a dialog where you can add a Wi-Fi network by entering its Network SSID (the name it broadcasts), security type, and other properties:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Wi-Fi**, and then select **Add Wi-Fi network**.
2. Use the keyboard to enter **Network SSID**.
3. Tap the **Security** field and then select a security type.

Note: Depending on the Security protocol used by the WAP, additional network information may be required, such as a Password.

4. If necessary, tap **Password** and enter the password or hex key.

Note: COnfirm you have entered the correct password by placing a green check mark in the **Show password** field.

5. Select **Save**.

Advanced Settings

Set up and manage wireless access points.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Advanced**.

   The following options display:

   - **Network notification**: Have your device alert you to new Wireless Access Points (WAPs). Tap **Network notification** to turn notifications On or Off. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.
   - **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**: Specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi. Option are: Always, Only when plugged in, or Never.
   - **MAC address**: View your device's MAC address, required when connecting to some secured networks (not configurable).
   - **IP address**: View your device's IP address.

Bluetooth

Use Bluetooth settings to manage Bluetooth connections, set your device's name, and control your device's visibility.

Turning Bluetooth On or Off

- From any Home screen, touch the time, then tap **Bluetooth** from the Quick Settings menu.

  For more information, refer to *"Quick Settings"* on page 33.

  – or –

  From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings**. On the Bluetooth tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Bluetooth on or off.

For more information about using Bluetooth to exchange information with other Bluetooth devices, see *"Bluetooth"* on page 154.

Additional Bluetooth Settings

When Bluetooth is on, additional settings are available.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Bluetooth**.
2. Tap **Scan** to scan for nearby discoverable devices. After searching, tap a device to pair with it. For more information, refer to *"Pairing with a Bluetooth Device"* on page 155.
3. Tap **Menu** and select a Bluetooth setting to configure:
   - **Rename device**: Your device's default name displays on screen. Tap to change the device name. Available when Bluetooth is turned On.
   - **Visible time-out**: Use this setting to control when to automatically turn off the Discoverable option: 2 min, 5 min, 1 hour, or Never timeout.
   - **Received files**: Show the list of files received by using Bluetooth.

Data Usage

From this screen you can view the Wi-Fi or Ethernet data usage.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Data usage**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn the Mobile data on or off.

To set a mobile data limit:

1. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn the Mobile data on or off.
2. Place a check mark in the **Set mobile data limit** field.
3. Read the on-screen disclaimer info and tap **OK**.
4. Touch and drag the far right ends of the red or orange horizontal lines to manually adjust both the Warning and Maximum data limits.
5. Touch and drag the bottom grey vertical lines to adjust the time frames.
6. Tap the **Data usage cycle** button and select either the current cycle or define your own by selecting **Change cycle**.
7. Tap **Upgrade data service** to access your account information and review your current plan information and possible upgrade options.
8. Tap an application link (bottom of screen) to review application settings and access restrict background data options.
9. Tap **Menu** and then select from the available on-screen options:
   - **Data roaming** allows you to connect to your service provider's partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage. For more information, refer to *"Data Roaming"* on page 207.
   - **Restrict background data** prevents background data usage. This can help prevent over usage of your data minutes.
   - **Show Wi-Fi usage** activates an additional Wi-Fi tab that shows you your Wi-Fi data usage.

Note: Data is measured by your device. Your service provider may account for data usage differently.

More Settings

This tab displays additional wireless and network information.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings**.

  Options display for Airplane mode, Mobile networks, Tethering and Mobile HotSpot, Wi-Fi Direct, VPN, Kies via Wi-Fi, and Nearby devices.

Airplane Mode

Airplane mode allows you to use many of your tablet's features, such as Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where accessing data is prohibited.

Important! When your tablet is in Airplane Mode, it cannot access online information or applications.

- Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key** then select **Airplane mode**.

  – or –

  From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Airplane mode**, tap the check box, and then select **OK** to turn on Airplane mode.

  A check mark appears in the check box when Airplane mode is On. The Airplane mode icon is displayed at the top of your screen.

Kies via Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi configuration and usage by Kies Air.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Kies via Wi-Fi**.
2. Select the source of the Wi-Fi connection for Kies air.

Using Mobile networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Mobile networks options.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks**.

The following options display:

Mobile data

Allows you to activate data network usage on your device.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Mobile data**.

Data Roaming

Connects to your service provider's partner networks and accesses data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Data roaming** to connect to data services while roaming outside your network.

   – or –

   Tap **Data roaming** again to remove the green check mark and deactivate the feature.

Access Point Names

To access a wireless access point:

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Access Point Names**. A list of the Access point names display. The active access point displays a bright green, filled circle to the right of the name.

Network mode

You can configure your device to either manually detect and use either an Auto (GSM/WCDMA), 2G (GSM only) or 3G (WCDMA only) data network connection.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.

Using the 4G Network

To confirm you are always using the fastest possible connection, the device has an automatic detection method where it finds both the fastest and most stable connection/communication method. This device is capable of using either 4G/3G services for this connection.

Note: WCDMA is only available on the 4G network.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM/WCDMA (Auto mode)**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active. This is the default mode for this device.

Using the 2G (EDGE) Network

If you are not using applications that require the 3G network speed (any application that accesses the network or uses a browser), using the 2G network saves battery life.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **GSM only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

Note: Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Using the 3G Network

If you are using applications that require the 3G network speed, follow these instructions to connect to the 3G network.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network mode**.
2. Tap **WCDMA only**. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

Network Operators

Using this feature you can view the current network connection. You can also scan and select a network operator manually, or set the network selection to Automatic.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks**.
2. Tap **Network operators**. The current network connection displays at the bottom of the list.

Important! You must deactivate data service prior to searching for an available network.

3. Tap **Search now** to manually search for a network.
4. Tap **Select automatically** to automatically select a network connection.

Note: Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Default Setup Options

Your device default is set to Automatic (to automatically search for an available network. You can set this option to Manual to select a network each time you connect.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Mobile networks** ➔ **Network operators**.
2. Tap **Default setup**.
3. Tap **Manual** to locate and connect to a network manually.

   – or –
4. Tap **Automatic** to allow the device to automatically select a network.

Tethering and Mobile HotSpot

The Tethering option allows you to share your device's mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and computer.

The Mobile HostSpot feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

For more information, see *"USB Tethering"* on page 157 or see *"Mobile Wi-Fi HotSpot"* on page 158.

Wi-Fi Direct Settings

You can configure your device to connect directly with other Wi-Fi capable devices. This is an easy way to transfer data between devices. These devices must be enabled for Wi-Fi Direct communication. This connection is direct and not via a hot spot or WAP.

Note: Activating this feature will disconnect your current Wi-Fi network connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Wi-Fi Direct**.
2. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Wi-Fi Direct on.
   If you are currently connected to a Wi-Fi network, a prompt displays **Start Wi-Fi Direct operation. This will turn off Wi-Fi client/hotspot operation**.
3. Tap **OK** to continue. Your device will begin to search for other devices enabled with Wi-Fi direct connections.

Note: Confirm (**Wi-Fi Direct On**) appears at the bottom of the screen.

4. Tap the Wi-Fi Direct tab to display Available devices.

5. Enable Wi-Fi Direct (similar to Steps 1 and 2) on the device to which you want to connect.

Note: The target device must also have Wi-Fi Direct service active and running before it is detected by your device.

6. Tap **Scan** and select the single device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.
7. Once the device you want to connect to is displayed, tap it.

   An Invitation to connect displays on the device to which you want to connect.
8. On that target device, tap **Accept**.

   You have 2 minutes to tap **Accept** on the device to which you want to connect for the connection to be made.
9. Once connected, the other device will show as **Connected** in your list of Wi-Fi Direct devices and the icon will display at the bottom of your screen.

For more information, refer to *"Wi-Fi Direct"* on page 152.

VPN

The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).

Important! Before you can use a VPN you must establish and configure one.

Adding a VPN

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP, L2TP/IPSec PSK, L2TP/IPSec RSA, IPSec Xauth PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, IPSec Hybrid RSA.

Note: You must also set a screen unlock PIN or password before you can use credential storage via VPN. For more information, refer to *"Screen Lock"* on page 225.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **VPN**.
2. Tap **Add VPN network**.
3. In the form that appears, fill in the information provided by your network administrator.
4. Tap **Save** to save your VPN settings.

Connecting To a VPN

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **VPN**.
2. Tap the VPN to which you want to connect.
3. In the pop-up that opens, enter any requested credentials.
4. Tap **Connect**.

Edit a VPN

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **VPN**.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to edit.
3. In the pop-up that opens, touch **Edit network**.
4. Make the desired VPN setting changes.
5. Touch **Save**.

Delete a VPN

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **VPN**.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to delete.
3. In the pop-up that opens, touch **Delete network**.

Kies via Wi-Fi

This feature provides Wi-Fi configuration and usage by Kies Air.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Kies via Wi-Fi**.
2. Select the source of the Wi-Fi connection for Kies air.

Nearby Devices

This option allows you to share your media files with nearby DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance) enabled devices.

Warning! If file sharing is enabled, other devices can access your data. Use the Wi-Fi network and this option with care.

To configure this option:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **More settings** ➔ **Nearby devices**.
2. Tap **File sharing** to turn File sharing on.

   A check mark appears in the check box when File sharing is On.

3. In the Advanced section, set the following options:
   - **Shared contents**: Select the content to share. Choices are: Videos, Photos, and Music.
   - **Device name**: Enter the name for your device. The default is the model number: SAMSUNG-SGH-XXX.
   - **Allowed devices list**: Indicate the devices accessible to your device.
   - **Not-allowed devices list**: Indicate the devices not accessible to your device.
   - **Download to**: Set whether to download data to USB storage or SD card.
   - **Upload from other devices**: If a nearby device attempts to upload data, this setting indicates the response. Options are: Always accept, Always ask, and Always reject.

Sound Settings

General Volume

Set the volume level for all types of sounds.

Note: You can only set volume when Silent Mode is disabled.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Sound** ➔ **Volume**.
2. Touch and drag the sliders to set the volume for:
   - **Music**, **video**, **games**, **and other media**: Sounds made by music apps, video apps, and more.
   - **Notifications**: Sounds for alerts to new messages and other events.
   - **System**: Application sounds and other sounds made by your device.

Tip: You can also set System volume from the Home screen by pressing the Volume Key.

3. Tap **OK** to save your settings.

Setting a Default Notification

Select a default ringtone for message, alarm, and other notifications.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Sound** ➔ **Default notifications**.
2. Tap a ringtone to hear a sample and select it.
3. Tap **OK** to save the setting.

Audible System Tone Settings

These options are used when you use the dialing pad, make a screen selection, lock your screen, or tap the screen. Each time you press a key or make a selection the selected tone sounds. You can activate or deactivate both touch and screen lock sounds.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Sound**.
2. Tap **Touch sounds** to activate a tone when you touch the screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.
3. Tap **Screen lock sound** to activate a tone when you use the Lock screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Display Settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display such as the font, orientation, pop-up notifications, puzzle lock feature, animation, brightness, screen timeout, and power saving mode.

Adjusting the General Display Features

Brightness

Set the default screen brightness.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Display** ➔ **Brightness**.
2. Touch and drag the slider to set the brightness or tap **Automatic brightness**.
3. Tap **OK** to save the setting.

Screen Timeout

Set the length of delay between the last key press or screen tap and the automatic screen timeout (dim and lock).

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Display**.
2. Tap **Screen timeout** and select the screen delay time. The screen delays shutting off after inactivity for the selected period of time.
   - Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, or 30 minutes.

Auto-Rotate Screen

When this option is checked, the screen orientation changes when you rotate the device. When this option is not checked, the screen orientation locks in the current orientation (landscape or portrait) and the orientation does not change when you rotate the device.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Display**.
2. Tap **Auto-rotate screen** to enable or disable the auto-rotate feature.

Tip: Tap the Time in the System Bar to display the Quick Settings pop-up. Tap **Screen rotation** to enable or disable the auto-rotate feature. For more information, refer to *"Quick Settings"* on page 33.

Font Style and Size

Set the font for screen displays and the size you want it to display.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Display**.
2. Tap **Font style** then select a font.
   - Selections are: **Default font**, **Choco cooky**, **Helvetica S**, **Rosemary**, or **Get fonts online**.

     Tap **Get fonts online** to download additional fonts.
3. Tap **Font size** and select a font size.

Quick Launch

The Quick Launch feature allows you to set multifunctional softkey to open applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Display**.
2. Tap **Quick launch**.
3. Tap **None**, **Screen capture**, **Applications**, **Search**, or **Camera**.

   If you choose Screen capture, tap the softkey to capture an image of the current screen and edit the image. Touch and hold to capture and add an image of the current screen to the clipboard.

   The screen image is saved in the /Root/Pictures/Screenshots folder. For more information, refer to *"My Files"* on page 182.

Wallpaper

To set the Home Screen and Lock Screen Wallpaper:

You can choose a picture to display on the Home Screen or Lock screen. Choose from preloaded wallpaper images or select a photo you have downloaded or taken with the Camera.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Wallpaper**.
2. Tap **Home screen wallpaper** or **Lock screen wallpaper**.

   The Select wallpaper from screen displays the following options: **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, and **Wallpapers**.

   For more information, refer to *"Wallpapers"* on page 42.

Power Saving Mode

This feature allows you both automatically set the device to use a power saving mode and configure additional power saving options manually, all in an effort to conserve battery power.When enabled, your device automatically analyzes the screen and adjusts the brightness to conserve battery power.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Power saving**.
2. On the Power saving tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Power saving on or off.
3. Tap **Custom power saving** to enable or disable the mode. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.
4. Tap **Screen power saving** to Use a low power level for screen display.
5. Tap **Learn about power saving** to display more information about saving power.

Storage

From this menu you can view the device memory or mount, unmount, or format an SD card.

Device Memory

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.

  The Device memory displays as Total space, Apps, Pictures, videos, Audio (music, ringtones, podcasts, etc.), Downloads, Miscellaneous files, and Available space.

To view the memory allocation for your external SD card:

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.

  The available SD card memory displays under the SD card heading.

To mount the SD card:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.
2. Tap **Mount SD card**.

Important! When formatting an SD card you will want to backup your music and photo files that are stored on the card because formatting the SD card deletes all the stored data.

To Format the SD Card:

1. Ensure the SD card is mounted.
2. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Storage**.
3. Tap **Format SD card** ➔ **Format SD card** ➔ **Delete all** to format the SD card. The SD card formats and erases all the data stored on it.

Battery

This option allows you to view a list of those components using battery power. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Battery**.

   The battery level displays in percentage. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.

2. From the upper-right tap **Refresh** to update the list.

   – or –

   Tap an entry to view more detailed information.

3. Tap **Screen**, **Android OS**, or **Android System** to view how the display and the Android system are affecting battery use.

Note: Other applications may be running that affect battery use.

Application Manager

You can download and install applications from Google Play or create applications using the Android SDK and install them on your device. Use Applications settings to manage applications.

Warning! Because this device can be configured with system software not provided by or supported by Google or any other company, end-users operate these devices at their own risk.

Memory Usage

See how memory is being used by Downloaded or Running applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Downloaded** or **Running** tabs to display memory usage for that category of applications.

   The graph at the bottom of the Downloaded tab shows used and free device memory. The graph at the bottom of the Running tab shows used and free RAM.

   – or –

   Tap **All** to see all current applications.

Downloaded Apps

Displays apps you have downloaded onto your device.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap **Downloaded** to view a list of all the downloaded applications on your device.
3. To switch the order of the lists displayed in the Downloaded tabs, tap **Menu** ➔ **Sort by size**.
4. Tap an application to view and update information about the application, including memory usage, default settings, and permissions. The following options are displayed:
   - **Force stop**: Stops an app that is misbehaving. Restart your device if stopping an app, process, or service causes your device to stop working correctly.
   - **Uninstall**: Deletes the application from the tablet.
   - **Clear data**: Clears application data from memory.
   - **Clear cache**: If the app stores data in a temporary area of the device's memory, and the amount of information stored is displayed, touch this button to clearing the temporary storage.

- **Clear defaults**: If you have configured an app to launch certain file types by default, clear that setting.
- **Permissions**: Lists the kinds of information about your device and data to which the app has access.

Uninstalling Third-party Applications

Important! You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Downloaded** tab and select your desired application.
3. Tap **Uninstall** (from within the top area of the Application info page).
4. At the prompt, tap **OK** to uninstall the application.
5. Select a reason for uninstalling the application, then tap **OK**.

Running Services

To view and control services running on your device:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **Running** tab.

   All the applications that are currently running on the device display.
3. Tap **Show cached processes** to display all the cached processes that are running.
4. Tap **Show services in use** to switch back.
5. Select one of the applications to view application information.

   The following options display:

   - **Stop**: Stops the application from running on the device. This is usually done prior to uninstalling the application.

Warning! Not all services can be stopped. Stopping services may have undesirable consequences on the application or Android System.

- **Report**: Report failure and other application information.

Note: Options vary by application.

Storage Used

This option allows you to view a list (on the current tab) of current applications as sorted by size.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Application manager**.
2. Tap the **All** tab to display all available applications.
3. Tap **Menu** ➔ **Sort by size** to change the current list to show items based on the amount of storage they occupy.

Accounts and Synchronization

Set up and manage accounts, including your Google and email accounts.

To activate Accounts and sync

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap the **Auto sync** icon to turn the feature on.

To deactivate Accounts and sync

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap the **Auto sync** icon again to turn the feature off.

Adding an Account

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap **Add account**.
3. Select one of the account types.
4. Use the keyboard and follow the prompts to enter your credentials and set up the account.

Tip: For more information about the types of accounts that you can add, see *"Accounts"* on page 65.

Removing an Account

Important! Removing an account also deletes all of its messages, contacts, and other data from the device.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap an account to display its settings.
3. Tap **Remove account** ➔ **Remove account** at the prompt to remove the account and delete all its messages, contacts, and other data.

Synchronizing All Accounts

Select the items you want to synchronize on your account such as Books, Calendar, Contacts, and more.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap **Sync all** to synchronize all your accounts.
   Tap **Cancel sync** to stop the synchronization.
3. On the **Auto-sync** field, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Auto-sync on or off, which controls whether changes you make to information on your device or on the web are automatically synced with each other.

Data and Synchronization

To sync account information manually:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accounts and sync**.
2. Tap an account to display its settings.
3. Tap **Sync now** to synchronize all data for the selected account.

   – or –

   Under **Data and synchronization**, tap the account data to synchronize it, such as, Calendar, Contacts, etc...

Location Services

You value your privacy. So, by default, your device only acquires your location when you allow it. To use Location-Based Services, you must first enable location services on your device.

Use Wireless Networks

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Use wireless networks option or enable the GPS satellites.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Location services**.
2. Tap **Use wireless networks** to enable location information using the wireless network.

Use GPS Satellites

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Location services**.
2. Tap **Use GPS satellites** to enable the GPS satellite.

Location and Google Search

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Location services**.
2. Touch **Location and Google search** to use your location data for improved Google Search results and other Google services.

Security

This menu contains features that allows you to configure the device's security parameters.

Screen Unlock Pattern Overview

To secure data and limit access, set the device to require a screen unlock pattern each time you turn on the device, or every time the device wakes up from sleep mode (when the screen automatically turns off).

The Screen lock menu allows to choose from a variety of locking features such as: **Swipe**, **Face Unlock**, **Pattern**, **PIN**, **Password**, and **None**.

Screen Lock

Choose settings for unlocking your screen. For more information about using the lock and unlock features, see *"Securing Your Device"* on page 20.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** for these settings:
   - **None**: No pattern, PIN, or password is required.
   - **Swipe**: Swipe the screen to unlock it.
   - **Pattern**: A screen unlock pattern is a touch gesture you create and use to unlock your device. Follow the prompts to create or change your screen unlock pattern.
   - **PIN**: Select a PIN to use for unlocking the screen.
   - **Password**: Create a password for unlocking the screen.

Note: Additional options are available only if you set **Screen lock** to display the lock screen (any setting other than **Swipe** or **None**).

Using Swipe

This feature is the least secure locking method and only requires that a user swipe the screen to unlock the device.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** ➔ **Swipe**.

Using Face Unlock

This feature used facial recognition to unlock your device. This feature is less secure than PIN, Pattern, and Password locks and can be bypassed by someone else who looks similar to you.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** ➔ **Face unlock**.
3. Read the on-screen notification and tap **Set it up**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Setting an Unlock Pattern

Creating a screen unlock pattern increases security on the device. When you enable the User visible pattern field, you will draw an unlock pattern on the screen whenever you want to unlock the device's touch screen.

The feature is now paired with a backup PIN code that acts as a backup to the pattern lock. If you forget your pattern, you can regain access to the device by entering a PIN code.

Note: Make sure the Require Pattern field is activated.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** ➔ **Pattern**.
3. Review the on-screen animation procedure for drawing a pattern and tap **Next** when you are ready to draw a pattern.
4. Draw your pattern by touching your first on-screen point. Then, **without removing your finger from the screen, drag your finger over adjacent points until the gray trace line overlaps each point** and they are highlighted with a green circle.
5. When you have connected at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal or diagonal direction, lift your finger from the screen and tap **Continue**.
6. Confirm the new pattern by redrawing it and then tapping **Confirm**. The Unlock pattern is set.
7. Enter the backup PIN code and tap **Continue**.

   Reenter the PIN to reconfirm the previous entry and tap **OK**.

Changing the Screen Lock Pattern

This feature allows you to change the previously stored unlock pattern and update it if necessary. This process is similar to changing your password from time to time.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
4. Tap **Pattern** and repeat steps 3 - 7 from the previous section.

Deleting the Screen Lock Pattern

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock**.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.

   Tap **None**.

PIN Lock and Unlock

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** ➔ **PIN**.
3. Enter a PIN number using the numeric keypad and touch **Continue** to confirm the password.
4. Confirm the PIN by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm.

   Your device now requires you to enter this PIN number in order to unlock the device.

Password Lock and Unlock

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Screen lock** ➔ **Password**.
3. Enter a password using the keypad and tap **Continue** to confirm the password.

   Confirm the password by re-entering it and tap **OK** to confirm.

With Swipe Lock

Display a lock screen that has to be swiped and then display a lock screen on which the face unlock, pattern, PIN, or password has to be entered.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap the **With swipe lock** check box to activate or deactivate the option. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Lock Screen Options

You can customize the Lock screen with the lock screen options.

Note: This feature is not active until **With swipe lock** is activated.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Lock screen options** and set the following options:
   - **Clock**: Activate or deactivate the Lock screen clock. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.
   - **Dual clock**: Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn this option on or off. This option shows a dual clock on the lock screen when roaming.
   - **Help text**: Display help text on the lock screen.

Note: After a screen lock feature has been enabled, additional on-screen features appear such as: Make pattern visible, Lock automatically, etc..

Make Pattern Visible

When the **Make pattern visible** option is enabled, the device displays the on-screen lock grid that is used for unlocking.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Locking Automatically

This option allows you to define the amount of time that must pass before the device can automatically lock on its own.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Lock Instantly With Power Key

Use this option to enable the lock screen when the power key is pressed. If this option is not enabled, the screen dims or brightens when the power key is pressed.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Lock instantly with power key**.

Note: When enabled, a green check mark appears in the adjacent box.

Owner Information

Use this option to enable or disable whether to show owner information on the lock screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security** ➔ **Owner information**.
2. Tap the **Show owner info on lock screen** checkbox to create a checkmark if you want your owner information displayed.
3. Enter text that you would like displayed on your Lock screen.
4. Tap **Back** twice to save the new text and return to the previous screen.

Encrypt device

To require a numeric PIN or password to decrypt your tablet each time you power it on:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Encrypt device**. For more information, read the displayed help screen.

Tip: Make sure your battery is charged more than 80 percent. Encryption takes an hour or more.

Encrypt SD card

To require a numeric PIN or password to decrypt the data on the SD card:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Encrypt external SD card**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Setting up SIM Card Lock

Prevent another user from using your SIM card to make unauthorized calls or from accessing information stored on your SIM card by protecting the information using a PIN code.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Set up SIM card lock**.
3. Tap **Lock SIM card**, enter your SIM PIN code, then tap **OK**.

Note: You must activate Lock SIM card before you can change your SIM PIN code.

To change an existing SIM Card PIN:

1. Tap **Change SIM PIN**.
2. Enter the old SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
3. Enter the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.
4. Re-type the new SIM PIN code and tap **OK**.

Password Settings

When you create a device password you can also configure the device to display the password as you type it instead of using an asterisk (*).

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Make passwords visible** to activate this feature. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Device Administration

To add or remove device administrators:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Device administrators** to begin configuring this setting.
3. Select an administrator device and follow the prompts.

Unknown Sources

Before you can download a web application you must enable the Unknown sources feature (enables downloading). Developers can use this option to install non-Play Store applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Unknown sources** to active this feature.
   An informational pop-up displays.
3. Read the message and tap **OK** to allow installation of non-Google Play applications.
   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Warning! Enabling this option causes your tablet and personal data to be more vulnerable to attack by applications from unknown sources.

Note: If you are notified that you can not download a Play Store application because it comes from an “Unknown source”, enabling this option corrects this issue.

Credential Storage

This option allows certain applications to access secure certificates and other credentials. Certificates and credentials can be installed to the SD card and password protected.

Trusted Credentials

If a certificate authority (CA) certificate gets compromised or for some other reason you do not trust it, you can disable or remove it.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Trusted credentials** to display only trusted CA certificates. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates secure credentials.
   The trusted credentials screen has two tabs:
   - **System**: Displays CA certificates that are permanently installed in the ROM of your device.
   - **User**: Displays any CA certificates that you installed, for example, in the process of installing a client certificate.
3. Tap a CA certificate to examine its details.
   A scrolling screen displays the details.

4. Scroll to the bottom of the details screen and touch **Disable** to disable a System certificate or **Remove** to remove a User certificate.

Caution! When you disable a system CA certificate, the **Disable** button changes to **Enable**, so you can enable the certificate again, if necessary. When you remove a user-installed CA certificate, it is permanently deleted and must be re-installed, if needed.

5. Tap **OK** to return to the certificate list.

   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Install from Device Storage

Install encrypted certificates from a storage device, such as a PC, with the USB cable.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Install from device storage**, then choose a certificate and follow the prompts to install.

Clear Credentials

Clear stored credentials.

Note: This setting only appears if you have installed encrypted certificates.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Security**.
2. Tap **Clear credentials** to remove all certificates.

Language and Input

This setting allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set on-screen keyboard options.

Language Settings

To set the language that the menus display on the device:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Language and input** ➔ **Language**.
2. Select a language and region from the list.

Select Input Method

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Language and input** ➔ **Default**.
2. Select an input method.

   – or –

   Tap **Configure input methods** to alter/modify the available input methods.

Configure Google Voice Typing

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Google voice typing** to automatically enable use of Google voice typing.
3. Tap next to the Google voice typing entry.
4. Select a language by tapping **Select input languages** area.
5. Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field. This allows you to select additional languages.
6. Select the desired languages.
7. Activate **Block offensive words** to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Configuring the Samsung keyboard

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar and tap adjacent to **Samsung keyboard**.
2. Set any of the following options:
   - **Input language**: Used to set a default text entry language. Tap this field, scroll through the options, and select the desired input language. When activated, a check appears in the box.
   - **Predictive text**: Enable or disable XT9 predictive text. When enabled the system suggests words matching your text entries, and, optionally, completes common words automatically. When XT9 is enabled, tap the **Predictive text** field to set the following options:
     - **Word completion**: Enable or disable automatic word completion for words matching your text entries.
     - **Word completion point**: Choose the number of letters for the system to use to predict words for automatic completion.
     - **Spell correction**: Enable or disable automatic spell checking and correction.
     - **Next word prediction**: When enabled, the system predicts the next word based on common usage patterns.
     - **Auto-append**: When enabled, the most common predicted word is automatically added to your text.
     - **Auto-substitution**: When enabled, the system automatically replaces words you enter with words from the XT9 auto-substitution list.
     - **Regional correction**: When enabled, the system automatically changes the spelling of words based on norms for your locale.
     - **Recapture**: When enabled, the system re-displays matching words when you make corrections to a word inserted by the system.
     - **Auto substitution list**: Manage the list of words the system uses for auto-substitution (Auto-substitution setting must be enabled).
   - **My word list**: Add words to your XT9 predictive text dictionary.
   - **Continuous input**: Allows you to enter text by sliding your finger across the keyboard.
   - **Handwriting**: Activate the feature then tap to display the following options:
     - **Recognition time**: Set the recognition time to 100, 300, 500, 1000, or 2000 milliseconds.
     - **Pen thickness**: Set the pen thickness to 1, 3, 5, 7, or 9 pixels.

– **Pen color**: Choose a pen color.
– **Recognition type**: Set the recognition after each stroke or after completion.
– **Gesture guide**: Displays examples of the various gestures that can be used to edit handwriting.
– **Tutorial**: Help for using Handwriting recognition.
– **About**: Displays information about the handwriting software.

- **Voice input**: Enable or disable the Voice input feature. When enabled, you can choose to enter text by speaking the words, using Google's networked speech recognition feature.
- **Auto capitalization**: Enable or disable auto-capitalization. When enabled, the system automatically capitalizes words in your text based on common usage, such as at the beginning of sentences.
- **Auto-punctuate**: Enable or disable automatic insertion of a "full stop" (period and space to end a sentence) by touching the space bar twice.
- **Character preview**: Check to display an automatic preview of the current character selection within the text string. This is helpful when multiple characters are available within one key.
- **Key-tap sound**: Check to play a brief sound each time you touch a key on the on-screen keyboard.
- **Tutorial**: Displays help for using the Samsung keyboard and XT9 predictive text.
- **Reset settings**: Reset keyboard settings except XT9 my words and auto-substitution.

Configuring the Swype Keypad

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar and tap adjacent to **Swype**.
   - For more information, refer to *"Language and Input"* on page 233.
2. Tap **How to Swype** to view an on-screen manual for Swype. Displays Swype help information. Tap a topic to view the information.
3. Tap **Preferences** to alter these settings:
   - **Sound on keypresses**: turns on sounds generated by the Swype application.
   - **Show helpful tips**: turns on a flashing indicator for quick help.
   - **Auto-spacing**: When enabled, inserts spaces automatically when you pause entering text.

- **Auto-capitalization**: When enabled, automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in a sentence.
- **Show complete trace**: When enabled, briefly display the Swype trace.
- **Next word prediction**: When enabled, suggests the next word based on your currently entered text.

Note: If incorrect words are being entered as you type, disabled this feature.

- **Remove**: Delete all words you have added to the Swype dictionary.
- **Version**: View the current Swype software version.

4. Tap **Language Options** to activate and select the current text input language. Default language is US English.
   - Allows you to select the languages available from the Swype keyboard.
   - Your are now also able to download additional language sets.
5. Tap **Swype Connect** to activate social media personalization and configure data settings.
   - **Facebook**: allows you to log into your current Facebook account from where contact names are added to your Swpe's personal dictionary for later use when you enter names into text fields. Helps recognize familiar names.
   - **Twitter**: allows you to sing into your existing Twitter account from where names and words are added to your personal dictionary. Helps recognize familiar names and words.
   - **Gmail**: allows you to sign in to your existing Gmail account from where existing contact information is added to your personal dictionary. Helps recognize familiar names.
   - **Contribute data usage**: when enabled, allows the Nuance® application to collect usage data for better word predictions.
   - **Cellular data**: when enabled, activates cellular data usage by the Swype application so it can receive program updates, language downloads, and other related features via your existing data connection.
6. Tap **Personal dictionary** to access and manage your personal dictionary.
7. Tap **Updates** to update the application if new software is available.

Configure Google Voice Typing

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar and tap adjacent to **Google voice typing**.
2. Select a language by tapping **Select input languages** area.
3. Remove the check mark from the **Automatic** field. This allows you to select additional languages.
4. Select the desired languages.
5. Activate **Block offensive words** to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

Configuring Voice Input Recognition

This feature allows the device to correctly recognize verbal input.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Language and input** ➔ **Voice search**.
2. Configure the available options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
   - **Language**: selects an input language and associated dialect recognition (if available).
   - **SafeSearch**: sets the explicit image filter settings. These settings apply to only Google voice search results. Choose from: **Off**, **Moderate**, or **Strict**.
   - **Block offensive words**: allows you to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).
   - **Personalized recognition**: improves the accuracy of the speech recognition feature.
   - **Google Account dashboard**: manages your Google collected data.

Configuring Text-to-speech

This feature allows the device to provide a verbal readout of on-screen data such as messages and incoming caller information. This action is called TTS (Text To Speech).

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔**Language and input** ➔ **Text-to-speech output**.
2. Select a current Preferred TTS engine from the list of available options. The default is Google Text-to-speech.
3. Tap next to the preferred TTS engine and configure.
4. Configure the General options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
   - **Speech rate**: adjusts the rate at which on-screen text is spoken by the device. Choose from: **Very slow**, **Slow**, **Normal**, **Fast**, and **Very fast**.
   - **Listen to an example**: plays a short example of what the text-to-speech feature sounds like on your device when activated.
   - **Driving mode**: when enabled, incoming calls and new notifications are automatically ready out loud.
     – Once active, tap the Driving mode field to reveal the associated settings.
   - **Driving mode settings**: Tap the Driving mode field and select which applications can use TTS while the Driving Mode is enabled. Choose from: New emails, Alarm, Schedule, or Unlock screen.

Configuring the Mouse-TrackPad

This feature allows you to configure the pointer speed for the mouse/trackpad.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Language and input**.
2. Tap **Pointer speed** then drag the slide to the right to go faster or to the left to go slower.
3. Tap **OK** to save your setting.

Back up and Reset

Location settings, backup configurations, or reset the device to erase all personal data.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset**.

Device Backup and Restore

The device can be configured to back up your current settings, application data and settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset**.
2. Tap **Back up my data** to create a backup of your current device settings and applications.
3. Tap **Backup account** to assign the account being backed up.
4. Tap **Automatic restore** to assist in the re-installation of a previously installed application (including preferences and data).
5. Tap **Factory data reset** to reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.

Prior to doing a Factory Reset

Before initiating a factory reset, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

Factory Data Reset

From this menu you can reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.

Use Factory data reset to return your device to its factory defaults. This setting erases all data from the device, including Google or other email account settings, system and application data and settings, and downloaded applications, as well as your music, photos, videos, and other files. If you reset the tablet in this way, the next time you turn on your tablet you are prompted to reenter the same kind of information as when you first started Android.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset** ➔ **Factory data reset**.
2. Tap **Reset device.**
3. If necessary, enter your password and tap **Delete all**. The device resets to the factory default settings automatically and when finished displays the Home screen.

Note: If you have set up your Samsung account, it has to be deleted before performing this function. For more information, refer to *"Removing an Account"* on page 223.

Collect Diagnostics

This feature only collects diagnostic data for troubleshooting use.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset** ➔ **Collect diagnostics.**
2. Read the on-screen System Manager Application information.

Note: This software collects only diagnostic data from your device so that T-Mobile technicians can better troubleshoot issues with your device.

3. Choose to enable or disable the feature by placing a check mark in the **Allow Diagnostics** field.
4. Select either **More Info..** (to read additional information) or **Close** to close the message screen.

Important! Selecting **Close** only closes the current description scree and does not disable data collection.
To disable data collection, go to **Settings** ➔ **Back up and reset** ➔ **Collect diagnostics** and turn off the **Allow Diagnostics** feature.

Accessory

This menu allows you to assign external speakers when the device is docked.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Dock**.

   Tap **Dock sound** to play sounds when inserting or removing the device from the dock. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.
2. Tap **Audio output mode** to set the HDMI (High-Definition Multimedia Interface) audio setting. Choose from: Stereo or Surround.

Date and Time

By default, your device receives date and time information from the wireless network. When you are outside network coverage, you may want to set date and time information manually using the Date & time settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Date and time**.
2. Tap **Automatic date and time** to allow the network set the date and time.

Important! Deactivate **Automatic date and time** to manually set the rest of the options.

3. Tap **Automatic time zone** to allow the network set the time zone information automatically. Configure the following settings:
   - **Set date**: Enter the current date (only available when the Automatic setting is disabled).
   - **Set time**: Enter the current time (only available when the Automatic setting is disabled).
   - **Select time zone**: Choose your local time zone (only available when the Automatic setting is disabled).
   - **Use 24-hour format**: Set the format for time displays.
   - **Select date format**: Set the format for date displays.

Accessibility

Accessibility services are special features to make using the device easier for those with certain physical disabilities. Use the Accessibility settings to activate these services.

Note: You can download accessibility applications from Google Play and manage their use here.

System

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Configure the following settings:
   - **Auto-rotate screen**: Automatically rotates the screen from landscape to portrait orientation and vice versa.
   - **Speak passwords**: Speaks passwords to enter them.
   - **Accessibility shortcut**: Add a shortcut to Accessibility settings that displays when you press and hold the Power key.
   - **Screen timeout**: Select the screen delay time The screen delays shutting off after inactivity for the selected period of time.

- **Lock automatically**: Lock the screen after it automatically turns off. Options are: Immediately; 5, 15, or 30 seconds; or 1, 2, 5, 10, or 30 minutes.

Note: The Lock automatically option only appears depending on the Screen lock setting.

Services

Enable or disable accessibility services.

Note: You must activate **Accessibility** before enabling services.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Tap **TalkBack** to activate TalkBack.

Note: TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

3. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn TalkBack on.
4. Tap **Settings** to configure TalkBack.

Important! TalkBack can collect all of the text you enter, except passwords, including personal data and credit card numbers. It may also log your user interface interactions with the device.

Vision

To install Web scripts:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Touch **Install Web scripts**.
3. Touch **Allow** to allow applications to install scripts from Google that make their Web content more accessible.

To set the font size:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Touch **Font size**.
3. Touch a font size. Options are: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, and Huge.

Hearing

When Mono audio is enabled, you can listen through one earphone to mono audio sound.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Touch **Mono audio**.

   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

To turn off all sounds including receiver voice:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Touch **Turn off all sounds**.

   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Mobility

This option allows you to set the Press and hold delay time.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Accessibility**.
2. Tap **Press and hold delay**, and then touch a delay time. Options are: Short, Medium, and Long.

Developer Options

Set options for application development.

USB Debugging

When enabled, allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.

Note: This setting is used for development purposes.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Developer options**.
2. Tap **USB debugging** to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Development Device ID

The identification number for your tablet when using it as a development tool displays in this field.

Allowing Mock Locations

This setting is used by developers when developing location-based applications. If you are a developer who is testing a GPS applications using this device, you can tell the device that the device is at different GPS locations. In other words, the device is allowed to "mock" the coordinates.

Note: This setting is used for development purposes.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Developer options**.
2. Tap **Allow mock locations** to enable or disable the setting.

   When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Desktop Backup Password

Protect the desktop with a backup password ID.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Developer options**.
2. Tap **Desktop backup password**.
3. In the Settings screen, enter the current full backup password, the new password for full backups, then enter the new password again.
4. Tap **Set backup password** to save the password change.

User Interface Options

Configure the user interface by setting the behavior for the way the screen behaves when using applications or displaying data.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Developer options**.
2. Tap the check box next to each option to enable:
   - **Strict mode**: Makes the screen flash when applications perform long operations on the main thread.
   - **Show pointer location**: Highlights the data that was touched on the screen.
   - **Show touches**: Displays touch interactions on the screen.
   - **Show screen updates**: Areas of the screen flash when they update.
   - **Show CPU usage**: Screen highlights the current CPU usage.
   - **Force GPU rendering**: Uses a 2D acceleration in applications.

- **Window animation scale**: Configure the scale for animation (ranges from off to 10x).
- **Transition animation scale**: Configure the scale for transitioning when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).

Application Options

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Developer options**.
2. Tap **Do not keep activities** to destroy every activity as soon as the application is closed.
3. Tap **Limit background processes** to set the number of processes that can run in the background. Options are: Standard limit, No background processes, and 1 to 4 processes at most.
4. Tap **Show all ANRs** to display a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.

About Device

View information about your device, including status, legal information, hardware and software versions, and battery use.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **About device**.
2. Tap items to view details:
   - **Software update**: Connect to the network and download new software. For more information, refer to *"Software Update"* on page 246.
   - **Status**: displays the Battery status, the Battery level (percentage), the Network connection, Signal strength, Mobile network type, Service state, Roaming status, Mobile network state, MDN, ERI, IMEI number, IMEI SV, IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, Up time, and Device status.
   - **Legal information**: Display **Open source licenses**, **Google legal**, and **License settings** information.

Tip: To find your device's DivX® registration code and information about registering your device to play DivX protected video, touch **License settings** ➔ **DivX® VOD**.

- **Model number**: displays the device's model number.
- **Android version**: displays the firmware version loaded on this device.
- **Baseband version**: displays the baseband version loaded on this device.
- **Kernel version**: displays the kernel version loaded on this device.
- **Build number**: displays the software, build number.

Software Update

The Software Update feature enables you to use your device to connect to the network and download any new software directly to your device. The device automatically updates with the latest available software.

Note: Before you can check for system updates, you must set up a Gmail account. For more information, refer to *"Setting Up Your Gmail Account"* on page 84.

Software Update Options

Once you have set up your Gmail account, you can check for a software update.

Note: The software update notification appears as at the bottom-right of the screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **About device** ➔ **Software update**.
2. Read the Software update information screen.
3. Select an available option:

Note: You configure the device's software update parameters.

- **Cancel**: Tap this option to cancel the operation.
- **Wi-Fi settings**: Enable this option to only download available updates via an active Wi-Fi connection. If disabled, the device will begin available downloads via its' T-Mobile connection.
- **OK**: Tap this option to connect to the remote server, detect if there is an available update, the begin the download over your existing data connection.
  - Software updates can include bug fixes, enhancements to services, to the device or currently installed software.

Section 12: Health and Safety Information

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your Galaxy Tab. The terms “GALAXY” or “mobile device” are used in this section to refer to your Galaxy Tab.

Read this information before using your mobile device.

Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

Although GALAXY is not a cell phone, it can operate on the same network as cell phones and can use the same Radio Frequency (RF) signals to communicate with the network as a cell phone. Therefore, although the following information refers specifically to RF exposure from wireless phones, it may apply similarly to GALAXY when it is being used on a cell phone network.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

Do cell phones pose a health hazard?

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.

The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules. Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation. Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

Interphone Study

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls.

Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than ½ hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a

slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200_E.pdf.

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html.

Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multi-center study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39.

Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at http://seer.cancer.gov/.

Cell Phone Industry Actions

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user; and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.

The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories

Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

Hands-Free Kits

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body.

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone. Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike "hands-free" kits, these so-called "shields" may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

Children and Cell Phones

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 10/1/2010):

- FCC RF Safety Program:
  http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/.

- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA): http://www.epa.gov/radtown/wireless-tech.html.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA): http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/. (Note: This web address is case sensitive.)
- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH): http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/.
- World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/en/.
- International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection: http://www.icnirp.de.
- Health Protection Agency: http://www.hpa.org.uk/Topics/Radiation/.
- US Food and Drug Administration: http://www.fda.gov/Radiation-EmittingProducts/RadiationEmittingProductsandProcedures/HomeBusinessandEntertainment/CellPhones/default.htm.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information

Your wireless mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for Radio Frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. Government.

These FCC RF exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations: the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.

The RF exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile devices employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless devices to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg).

The FCC SAR limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the mobile device transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the mobile device while operating can be well below the maximum reported value. This is because the mobile device is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output of the mobile device.

Before a new model mobile device is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the SAR limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model mobile device are performed in positions and locations (e.g. near the body) as required by the FCC.

For typical operations, this mobile device has been tested and meets FCC SAR guidelines.

Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this mobile device with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. The maximum SAR values for this model device as reported in the FCC equipment authorization grant is:

- Body: 1.55 W/Kg.

SAR information on this and other model mobile devices can be accessed online on the FCC's website through http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html. To find information that pertains to a particular model mobile device, this site uses the mobile device FCC ID number, which is usually printed somewhere on the case of the mobile device.

Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular mobile device, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular mobile device. Additional SAR information can also be obtained at http://www.fcc.gov/encyclopedia/specific-absorption-rate-sar-cellular-telephones.

FCC Part 15 Information to User

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Smart Practices While Driving

On the Road - Off the Tablet

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or using a mobile device - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. **Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes impaired**. Samsung is committed to promoting responsible driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand and address distractions.

Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use may be permitted in certain areas.

Before using your device to chat with friends, consider your circumstances. Let the chat wait when driving conditions require. Remember, driving comes first, nothing else!

If you consider a chat necessary and appropriate, follow these tips:

- Use a hands-free device;
- Secure your mobile device within easy reach;
- Chat when you are not moving;
- Plan chats when your car will be stationary;
- Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations;
- Let the person with whom you are speaking know that you are driving and will suspend the chat if necessary;
- Do not take notes or look up information while driving;

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could result in fines, penalties, or other damages.

Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the driver's clear view of the street and traffic.

Never use wireless data services such as Web browsing or e-mail while operating a vehicle.

Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video games while operating a vehicle.

For more information, go to http://www.ctia.org.

Battery Use and Safety

The battery in GALAXY is not intended to be replaced by the consumer. If you believe the battery is damaged or needs to be replaced, take the GALAXY to a service center for inspection and replacement.

- **Do not let the GALAXY or battery come in contact with liquids**. Liquids can get into the GALAXY's circuits, leading to corrosion. Even when the GALAXY appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a safety hazard. If the GALAXY and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.
- **Do not place your battery in or near a heat source**. Excessive heating can damage the GALAXY or the battery and could cause the GALAXY or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your GALAXY in your car in high temperatures.
- **Do not dispose of the GALAXY or the battery in a fire**. The GALAXY or the battery may explode when overheated.
- **Avoid dropping the GALAXY**. Dropping the GALAXY, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the GALAXY. If you suspect damage to the GALAXY or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.
- **Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way**.

Important! Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your GALAXY.

WARNING!

Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard. Samsung's warranty does not cover damage to the GALAXY caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

- **Do not use incompatible batteries and chargers**. Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers. Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.
- **Misuse or use of incompatible batteries and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard**.

Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.

Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment. Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly.

For more information about recycling your GALAXY, go to: http://mobile.samsungusa.com/recycling/index.jsp or call 1-800-822-8837 for more information.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to: www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect or call 1-877-278-0799.

Warning! Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

UL Certified Travel Charger

The Travel Charger for this mobile device has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

FAILURE TO FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS OUTLINED MAY LEAD TO SERIOUS PERSONAL INJURY AND POSSIBLE PROPERTY DAMAGE.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS - SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

DANGER - TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

FOR CONNECTION TO A SUPPLY NOT IN NORTH AMERICA, USE AN ATTACHMENT PLUG ADAPTOR OF THE PROPER CONFIGURATION FOR THE POWER OUTLET.

THIS POWER UNIT IS INTENDED TO BE CORRECTLY ORIENTED IN A VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL OR FLOOR MOUNT POSITION.

Display / Touch-Screen

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

WARNING REGARDING DISPLAY

The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the “Standard Limited Warranty”.

GPS

GALAXY can use a Global Positioning System (GPS) signal for location-based applications. A GPS uses satellites controlled by the U.S. Government that are subject to changes implemented in accordance with the Department of Defense policy and the 2008 Federal Radio navigation Plan (FRP). Changes may affect the performance of location-based technology on your mobile device.

Your Location

Location-based information includes information that can be used to determine the approximate location of a mobile device. Mobile devices which are connected to a wireless network transmit location-based information. Additionally, if you use applications that require location-based information (e.g. driving directions), such applications transmit location-based information. The location-based information may be shared with third-parties, including your wireless service provider, applications providers, Samsung, and other third-parties providing services.

Navigation

Maps, directions, and other navigation-data, including data relating to your current location, may contain inaccurate or incomplete data, and circumstances can and do change over

time. In some areas, complete information may not be available. **Therefore**, **you should always visually confirm that the navigational instructions are consistent with what you see before following them. All users should pay attention to road conditions, closures, traffic, and all other factors that may impact safe driving or walking. Always obey posted road signs**.

Emergency Communication

GALAXY should not be relied upon for essential communications (medical emergencies, calls to 911, or communications to emergency services). GALAXY is not designed or intended to be used for such communications. Voice Over Internet Protocol (VOIP) services which may be used on GALAXY to make phone calls do not support 911 calls and are only intended for talking with friends.

Care and Maintenance

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from:

Liquids of any kind

Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits.

If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion. Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

Extreme heat or cold

Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

Microwaves

Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

Dust and Dirt

Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

Cleaning solutions

Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft

cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution.

Shock or vibration

Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.

Paint

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device's moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

Responsible Listening

Caution! Avoid potential hearing loss.

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations.

Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss. This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices).

Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.

- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
- Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment, use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise, noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music at lower volumes than when using earbuds.
- Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before you hearing could be affected.
- Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss. Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.
- Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

American Academy of Audiology

11730 Plaza American Drive, Suite 300
Reston, VA 20190

Voice: (800) 222-2336
Email: info@audiology.org

Internet:
http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx

National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders

National Institutes of Health
31 Center Drive, MSC 2320
Bethesda, MD 20892-2320

Email: nidcdinfo@nih.gov

Internet:
http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)

395 E Street, S.W., Suite 9200
Patriots Plaza Building
Washington, DC 20201

Voice: 1-800-35-NIOSH
(1-800-356-4674)
1-800-CDC-INFO (1-800-232-4636)
Outside the U.S. 513-533-8328

Email: cdcinfo@cdc.gov

Internet:
http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/noise/default.html

1-888-232-6348 TTY

Operating Environment

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

Implantable Medical Devices

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON;
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;

- Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see: http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-faqs.html#.

Other Medical Devices

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

Vehicles

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Posted Facilities

Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

Potentially Explosive Environments

Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

When your Device is Wet

Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately, if applicable (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device

Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or use services that increase your mobile device bill.

Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

FCC Notice and Cautions

FCC Notice

The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

Cautions

Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers.

The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device. Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

Other Important Safety Information

- Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device. Faulty service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
- Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment used in your vehicle are securely mounted.

- Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.
- When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.
- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.
- Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft's operation. Check with appropriate authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on an aircraft.
- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of network services to the offender, or legal action, or both.
- While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.
- Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.
- Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.
- If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets. [122011]

Section 13: Warranty Information

Standard Limited Warranty

What is covered and for how long?

SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC ("SAMSUNG") warrants that SAMSUNG's devices and accessories ("Products") are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the period commencing upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

Tablet	1 Year
Batteries (Including Internal Batteries)	1 Year
Case	90 Days
Other Tablet Accessories	1 Year

What is not covered?

This Limited Warranty is conditioned upon proper use of Product by Purchaser.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture, dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG; (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (g) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source; (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception

or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG Tablet for which it is specified.

What are SAMSUNG's obligations?

During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, without charge to Purchaser, or at SAMSUNG's sole option, refund the purchase price.

SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG's sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned or new Product. Repaired/replaced cases will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. This Limited Warranty is extended to the Purchaser and is not transferable or assignable to any other person or entity.

What must you do to obtain warranty service?

To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must return the Product to an authorized Tablet service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase, the serial number of the Product and the seller's name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-800-SAMSUNG. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product.

Purchaser should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.

What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS. ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT; LOSS OF USE, TIME, DATA, REPUTATION, OPPORTUNITY, GOODWILL, PROFITS OR SAVINGS; INCONVENIENCE; INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES; OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE PURCHASER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.

This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

What is the procedure for resolving disputes?

ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE SALE, CONDITION OR PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY. Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's Product or claim, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action.

The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the Limited Warranty and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the Limited Warranty.

For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are $5,000.00 or less (“Small Claim”), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant SAMSUNG its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or $50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and SAMSUNG shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed $5,000.00 (“Large Claim”) shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator’s award in any court of competent jurisdiction.

This arbitration provision also applies to claims against SAMSUNG's employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the Product's sale, condition or performance.

You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to SAMSUNG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out." You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the Product was purchased; (c) the Product model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the Product box; (ii) on the Product information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the Product beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the Product if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the Product and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of the Limited Warranty.

Severability

If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

Precautions for Transfer and Disposal

If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung's Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the **Samsung Customer Care Center** for details.

Important! Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung's Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, Texas 75082

Phone: 1-800-SAMSUNG

Phone: 1-888-987-HELP (4357)

©2012 Samsung Telecommunications America. All rights reserved.

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [111611]

End User License Agreement for Software

IMPORTANT. READ CAREFULLY: This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. ("Samsung Electronics Co.") for software, owned by Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliated companies and its third party suppliers and licensors, that accompanies this EULA, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, "online" or electronic documentation ("Software"). **Samsung Electronics Co. is a separate company from the company that provides the limited warranty for this mobile device, Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC.**

This device requires the use of preloaded software in its normal operation. BY USING THE DEVICE OR ITS PRELOADED SOFTWARE, YOU ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THESE TERMS, **DO NOT USE** THE DEVICE OR THE SOFTWARE. INSTEAD, RETURN THE DEVICE TO THE RETAILER FOR A REFUND OR CREDIT.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. Samsung Electronics Co. grants you the following rights provided that you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA: You may install, use, access, display and run one copy of the Software on the local hard disk(s) or other permanent storage media of one computer and use the Software on a single computer or a mobile device at a time, and you may not make the Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the Software in machine readable form for backup purposes

only; provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.

2. RESERVATION OF RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP. Samsung Electronics Co. reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA. The Software is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and treaties. Samsung Electronics Co. or its suppliers own the title, copyright and other intellectual property rights in the Software. The Software is licensed, not sold.

3. LIMITATIONS ON END USER RIGHTS. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code or algorithms of, the Software (except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law not withstanding this limitation), or modify, or disable any features of, the Software, or create derivative works based on the Software. You may not rent, lease, lend, sublicense or provide commercial hosting services with the Software.

4. CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. You agree that Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliates may collect and use technical information gathered as part of the product support services related to the Software provided to you, if any. Samsung Electronics Co. and its affiliates may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you and will not disclose this information in a form that personally identifies you.

5. UPGRADES. This EULA applies to updates, supplements and add-on components (if any) of the Software that Samsung Electronics Co. may provide to you or make available to you after the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software, unless we provide other terms along with such upgrade. To use Software identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed for the Software identified by Samsung Electronics Co. as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the Software that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.

6. SOFTWARE TRANSFER. You may not transfer this EULA or the rights to the Software granted herein to any third party unless it is in connection with the sale of the mobile device which the Software accompanied. In such event, the transfer must include all of the Software (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, this EULA) and you may not retain any copies of the Software.

The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end user receiving the Software must agree to all the EULA terms.

7. EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You acknowledge that the Software is subject to export restrictions of various countries. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the Software, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end user, end use, and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

8. TERMINATION. This EULA is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically without notice from Samsung Electronics Co. if you fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions of this EULA. Upon termination of this EULA, you must cease all use of the Software and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the Software.

9. Disclaimer of Warranty. ALL SOFTWARE PROVIDED BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OR ITS AFFILIATES SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OF WARRANTY REGARDING THE SOFTWARE, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY OF ANY SORT FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.

10. THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS. Certain third party applications may be included with, or downloaded to this mobile device. Samsung Electronics Co. makes no representations whatsoever about any of these applications. Since Samsung Electronics Co. has no control over such applications, you acknowledge and agree that Samsung Electronics Co. is not responsible for the availability of such

applications and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, services, or other materials on or available from such applications. You expressly acknowledge and agree that use of third party applications is at your sole risk and that the entire risk of unsatisfactory quality, performance, accuracy and effort is with you. It is up to you to take precautions to ensure that whatever you select to use is free of such items as viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and other items of a destructive nature. References on this mobile device to any names, marks, products, or services of any third-parties are provided solely as a convenience to you, and do not constitute or imply an endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation of, or affiliation with the third party or its products and services. You agree that Samsung Electronics Co. shall not be responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage or loss caused or alleged to be caused by, or in connection with, use of or reliance on any such third party content, products, or services available on or through any such application. You acknowledge and agree that the use of any third-party application is governed by such third party application provider's Terms of Use, License Agreement, Privacy Policy, or other such agreement and that any information or personal data you provide, whether knowingly or unknowingly, to such third-party application provider, will be subject to such third party application provider's privacy policy, if such a policy exists. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PRACTICES OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER.

11. Disclaimer of Warranty Regarding Third Party Applications. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY, USE, TIMELINESS, SECURITY, VALIDITY, ACCURACY, OR RELIABILITY OF, OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF, OR OTHERWISE RESPECTING, THE CONTENT OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WHETHER SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., IS DOWNLOADED, OR OTHERWISE OBTAINED. USE OF ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION IS DONE AT YOUR OWN DISCRETION AND RISK AND YOU ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGE TO THE MOBILE DEVICE OR LOSS OF DATA THAT RESULTS FROM THE DOWNLOADING OR USE OF SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING WHETHER YOUR PERSONAL INFORMATION IS CAPTURED BY ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER OR THE USE TO WHICH SUCH PERSONAL INFORMATION MAY BE PUT BY

SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER. ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS PROVIDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ON AN "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO., EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION, THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE THIRD PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE CORRECTED. YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY YOU FROM SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY REGARDING THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY BY SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO.

12. Limitation of Liability. SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE OR ANY THIRD PARTY APPLICATION, ITS CONTENT OR FUNCTIONALITY, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES CAUSED BY OR RELATED TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, DEFECTS, DELAY IN OPERATION OR TRANSMISSION, COMPUTER VIRUS, FAILURE TO CONNECT, NETWORK CHARGES, IN-APP PURCHASES, AND ALL OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES EVEN IF SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, SAMSUNG ELECTRONIC CO.'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL LOSSES, DAMAGES, CAUSES OF ACTION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THOSE BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR THIRD PARTY APPLICATIONS ON THIS MOBILE DEVICE, OR ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS EULA, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PURCHASER PAID SPECIFICALLY FOR THIS MOBILE DEVICE OR ANY SUCH THIRD PARTY APPLICATION THAT WAS INCLUDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 9, 10, 11 AND 12) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

13. U.S. Government End Users Restricted Rights. The Software is licensed only with "restricted rights" and as "commercial items" consisting of "commercial software" and "commercial software documentation" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Products are provided only with "restricted rights" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Software and Products are provided subject to Federal Acquisition Regulation (FAR) 52.227.19.

14. APPLICABLE LAW. This EULA is governed by the laws of TEXAS, without regard to conflicts of laws principles. This EULA shall not be governed by the UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

15. DISPUTE RESOLUTION.

(a) Non-United States residents. If a dispute, controversy or difference is not amicably settled, it shall be finally resolved by arbitration in Seoul, Korea in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the Korean Commercial Arbitration Board. The award of arbitration shall be final and binding upon the parties.

(b) United States residents. ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS CO. ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS EULA OR YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY. Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with any other person's or entity's claim or dispute, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action. The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The

arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the EULA and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the EULA. For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are $5,000.00 or less ("Small Claim"), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant Samsung Electronics Co. its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or $50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and Samsung Electronics Co. shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed $5,000.00 ("Large Claim") shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court of competent jurisdiction. This arbitration provision also applies to claims against Samsung Electronics Co.'s employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the licensing or use of the Software. You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to Samsung Electronics Co. no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser's purchase of this device. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: "Arbitration Opt Out." You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the device was purchased; (c) the device model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the device box; (ii) on the device information screen, which can be found under "Settings;" (iii) on a label on the back of the device beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the device if the battery is not removable). Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of

the first consumer purchaser's purchase of the device and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect your use of the device or its preloaded Software, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of this license.

16. ENTIRE AGREEMENT; SEVERABILITY. This EULA is the entire agreement between you and Samsung Electronics Co. relating to the Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals and representations with respect to the Software or any other subject matter covered by this EULA. If any provision of this EULA is held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, the other provisions shall continue in full force and effect. [101212]

Index

Numerics

2G Network
Using 208
3G Network 208
Using 208
4G Network 158, 208, 210
Using 208

A

Accessory 240
Dock Sound 240
Account
Adding 222
Removing 223
Accounts
setting up 65
Sync All 223
Active Applications
Downloaded 20
Task Manager 19
Adobe PDF 191
Airplane Mode 35, 206
Alarm
Turning Off 164
Alarm Tone
Setting 136
Allow Diagnostics 16, 240
AllShare
configuring 164
AnyTIme Apps
see also Mini App Tray 27
App Shortcuts 41
Application Bar 26, 31
Application Manager 219
Applications 44
Alarm 45
AllShare Play 45
Calculator 45
Calendar 45
Camera 45
Contacts 45
downloading new 189
Downloads 46
Email 46
Gallery 46
Game Base 46
Gmail 46
Google+ 46
Internet 46
Latitude 46
Local 47
Lookout Security 47
Managing Downloaded Apps 220
Maps 47
Media Hub 47
Memo 47
Messaging 47
Messenger 47
Mobile HotSpot 48
More for Me 48
Music Player 48
My Files 48
Navigation 48
Photo Editor 48

Play Books 48
Play Magazines 49
Play Movies & TV 49
Play Music 49
Play Store 49
Polaris Office 49
Pro Apps 49
S Suggest 50
Samsung Apps 50
Search 50
Settings 50
Shutting Down 19
Slacker Radio 50
Smart Remote 50
Storage Used 222
Talk 51
T-Mobile My Account 50
T-Mobile TV 51
Uninstalling Third-party Applications 221
Video Maker 51
Video Player 51
VPN Client 51
World Clock 51
YouTube 51
Zinio 51
Applications settings
allow mock locations 244
development 243
running services 221
stay awake 243
USB debugging 243
Audio
Output Mode 240
Automatic Restore 239

B

Back button 30
Back up
My Account 239
My Data 239
Backup and Restore 239
Battery
charging 10
Extending Life 13
indicator 10
installing and removing 10
Battery Life
Extending 13
Battery Use & Safety 256
Bluetooth
Change Name 155
Change Visibility Timeout 155
List Received Files 155
pairing with a device 155
Rename Device 204
Settings 154
settings 204
turning on or off 154
Browser
Adding New Window 143
Deleting a Window 143
Quick Controls 149
Browser Settings 146
Bubble
Options 80

C

Calendar 166
Camcorder
recording video 109
Settings 109, 110

Camera
settings 105
taking photos 103
Care and Maintenance 260
ChatON
Buddy photo share 107, 118
Children and Cell Phones 252
Clear Cookies 147
Clear History 147
Clear Memory
Task Manager 19
Contacts
creating 66
display options 68
exporting and importing 72
groups 72
joining 71
linking 70
namecards 71
separating joined 71
setting a photo as contact icon 119
starred contacts 74
updating 67
CPU Usage
Display 244
Creating and sending
Messages 76

D

Data
Restrict Background Data 205
Data Limit
Setting 205
Data Roaming 207
Activate/Deactivate 205, 207
Data Usage
Cycle 205
Limiting 205
Deleting
Multiple Messages 81
Single Bubble 81
Single Message 81
Desktop Backup Password 244
Device
Reset 239
Device Options 25
Disconnect Storage 54
Display / Touch-Screen 259
Display settings
font style 216
DivX
Locating VOD Number 114
Overview 114
Registering Your DivX Device 115
DivX®
registration code 246
DLNA 212
Do cell phones pose a health hazard? 248
Dock
Sound 240
Downloads
managing 190

E

EDGE Network 208
Email
Combined view 90
composing and sending 92
configuring accounts 88

Emoticons 77
Erasing files from
Memory card 54
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 248

F

Face Unlock 225
Facebook
Swpe Connect 236
Facial Recognition 225
Factory Data Reset 239
Prior To 239
Factory data reset 54
FCC Notice and Cautions 265
Firmware Update 160
Font
Size 216
Style 216
Format
SD Card 54, 218

G

Gallery 116
sharing photos and video 120
viewing photos and video 117
Games
Volume 213
Gmail
account settings 86
composing and sending 86
Labels 85
Personalize Swype 236
refreshing your account 84
setting up your account 84
Signature 87
Google
Gmail 84
Latitude 172
Maps 176
Navigation 184
Play Store 189
your account 15
YouTube 200
Google Messenger 101
Google Music 125
Google Places
See also Local 174
Google Play 189
Google Search 194
Google Voice Typing 64
Configuring 233, 237
Google+ 141
GPS 259
GPS Applications 161
GPU
Force Rendering 244
Group Cast 106
Groups
creating 72
GSM 208

H

Handwriting 56
Health and Safety Information 248
Home button 30
Home Page
Assigning New 29
Home screen 26
adding widgets 38
customizing 28
primary shortcuts 37
wallpaper 42

Home Screen Wallpaper
Setting 217
HSPA+ 158, 210

I

Images
Assigning as a Contact icon 107
Assigning as wallpaper 107
Infrared Blaster 24
Internet 141
Internet Email 88
IP Address 245
Wi-Fi 203

K

Kies 160
via Wi-Fi 206, 212

L

Language and keyboard Settings
Select Locale 233
LDAP 65
Local 174
Location and Google Search 224
Location Services Settings 224
Lock Screen Wallpaper
Setting 217
Locking and Unlocking
unlocking the keypad 21

M

MAC Address
Wi-Fi 203
Map Settings 178
Maps 176
Memory card
Erasing files from the 54
Menu
context-sensitive 31
Message
Options 77
Read 79
Reply 80
Thread Options 80
Threads 80
Message Search 81
Message threads 80
Messages
Gmail 84
types 76
Messaging
Adding Attachments 78
Additional Text 79
Creating and sending 76
Deleting a message 81
Insert Smiley 77
Menu Options 77
Options 77
Settings 82
Text Templates 83
Viewing new 79
Messenger 101
microSD Card
Installing 9
Removal 10
Microsoft Exchange 88
Mini App Tray 27, 43
Mobile Data 207
Off 35
On/Off 34
Set Data Limit 205
Mobile Networks 207
Data Roaming 207
Mobile Data 207

Mounting the SD card 53
Music
add songs to a playlist 131
creating a playlist 131, 134
Music Player 133
Volume 213
Music app 125
Music File Extensions
3GP 133
AAC 133
AAC+ 133
eAAC+ 133
M4A 133
MP3 133
MP4 133
WMA 133
Music Player
Making a Song a Alarm Tone 134
Managing Your Music 134
Playing Music 133

N

Namecards
sending 71
Navigation 30
command keys 37
Primary Shortcuts 37
screen 31
Navigation button 30
Nearby Devices
Settings 212
Network Mode
2G Network 208
3G Network 208
Notification
Default 214
Notification Panel 32
Notifications 32
Volume 213

O

Offensive Words
Block 237
Operating Environment 263
Other Important Safety Information 265
Outlook 88

P

Pairing with Bluetooth 155
Passwords
Make Visible 230
Peel 50, 195
Set up 195
Photo ID
setting 119
Photos
Gallery 116
sharing 120
taking 103
Picture
Assign as Contact Icon 107
Assign as Wallpaper 107
Play Movies 124
Play Music
Tab Options 126
Play Store 189
Playlists
adding songs 131
creating 131, 134
Pointer Speed
Configuration 238

Pop-Ups
Blocking 148
Power Saving Mode 217
Custom 217
Powering On and Off 12
Predictive Text 234
Privacy settings
factory data reset 239

Q

Quick Controls 149

R

RAM Manager
Task Manager 19, 20
Reducing Exposure
Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories 251
Reset 239
factory data 239
Reset Device 239
Responsible Listening 261
Restarting
Device 12
Restore 239
Restrict
Background Data 205
Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile device 265

S

SafeSearch 237
Samsung Account
Accounts and sync 17
Creating 17
Samsung Keyboard
Configuring 57
Entering Text 56
Predictive Text 58
Samsung Keypad
Entering Letters 57
Entering Symbols and Numbers 58
Samsung Kies 160
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling 258
Screen
Adding Shortcuts 41
Screen Capture 166
Screen Lock
Set Up 226
Sounds 214
Screen Lock Pattern
Changing 226
Creating 226
Deleting 227
Screen settings
auto-rotate screen 215
brightness 215
timeout 215
Screen Unlock
Face Unlock 225
Swipe 225
Screenshots
My Files 30
SD Card
Available Space 218
Encrypt 229
Format 218
SD card
Connecting to 53
Disconnect Storage 54

Mounting the 53
Unmounting 54
Search
Google 194
Securing your device
locking and unlocking 20
Security
locking and unlocking 20
locking your device 20
Security settings
device administration 230
trusted credentials 231
Settings 202
Enabling the GPS Satellites 224
Location Services 224
Shortcuts 41
SIM
Micro 7
SIM Card 7
Changing Exisitng PIN 230
Installing 7
Lock 230
Removing 8
Setting Up Lock 230
Slacker Radio 194
Smart Alarm 163
Smart Practices While Driving 255
Smart Remote
see Peel 195
Snooze 164
Repeat 163
Software Update 246
Wi-Fi 247
Sound settings
ringer volume 213
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)
Certification Information 253
Standard Limited Warranty 267
Status Bar 35
Storage 218
Strict Mode 244
Swype
Cellular Data 236
configuring 62
Connect 236
Contribute Data Usage 236
entering text 61
help 62
Personal Dictionary 236
Preferences 235
Updates 236
Sync Now 223
Synchronization settings
auto-sync 223
System Manager 16, 240
System Tone
Settings 214
Systeme
Volume 213

T

Tethering 157
Activating 157
Active Icon 157
Disconnecting 157
Text
changing input method 55
entering 55
input methods 55
Size 147
using Swype 61
Virtual QWERTY Keyboard 55

Text Templates
Create Your Own 83
Text To Speech 238
Text-to-speech
Configuration 238
Third-Party Applications 221
Touches
Show 244
TrackPad
Configure 238
TTS 238
Turning Your Device On and Off 12
Twitter
Personalize Swype 236

U

UL Certified Travel Charger 258
Unknown Sources
Installing Unsigned Apps 231
Unlock
Using Face 225
Unmounting
SD card 54
Unsigned Apps
Unknown Sources 231
Update Available 162
USB connections
as a mass storage device 161
USB settings
as a mass storage device 161
mass storage device 161
Windows Media Player 160
Use GPS Satellites 224
Use Wireless Networks 224

V

Video
Changing Screen Display Mode 113
Volume 213
Video Maker 112, 114
Videos
Gallery 116
recording 109
sharing 120
Voice Input
Recognition 237
Voice Search 237
Voice Typing
Configuring 233, 237
Volume
key 25
VPN Client 197

W

Wallpaper 217
Wallpapers
Assigning from Gallery 107, 118
Warranty Information 267
WCDMA 208
Widgets 38
Wi-Fi
adding a connection manually 151
Direct 72
Direct settings 210
enabling 172
IP Address 203
MAC Address 203
scanning and connecting 151
settings 202
Show Usage 205
Sleep Policy 152
Status icons 151
turning on or off 150, 202

WiFi (see Wi-Fi) 150
Wi-Fi Direct 36, 152
Wi-Fi HotSpot 158
Changing Information 159
Connecting 159
Editing 158
Windows Media Player
Synchronizing with 160
Wireless Networking
Bluetooth 154
Wi-Fi 150
World Clock 197
WPA2 PSK 159

X

XT9 Predictive Text 234

Y

YouTube 200